

तत्त्वार्थ सूत्रम्
TATVARTHA SUTRAM

(A Treatise on the Essentials of Jainism)

By
Griddhrapinchacharya Sri Umaswami Maharaj



Originally Edited by :
(Late) J. L. JAINI M. A.
Bar - at - Law, Judge, High Court, Indore

Re-published by
BARRISTER CHAMPAT RAI JAIN TRUST
Controlling Authority
DELHI.



on the occasion of
SEMINAR ON JAINISM AND UNIVERSAL PEACE
NOVEMBER 1956

Price 5/-

FOREWORD

The *Tarvati Sutra* is rightly termed and known as *Jaina Bible* and enjoys the unique distinction of being regarded as an authoritative work by all sections of the Jains.

The first edition of this book with introduction, translation, notes and commentary in English by late J. L. Jaini, M. A. was published in 1920 by Kumar Devendra Prasad from the central Jain Publishing House Arrah as Volume II of the sacred books of the Jains. The publication soon got exhausted and for the last 15 years copies of this publication were not at all available. We had a great longing to bring out a second edition and were in contact with the Trustees of R. B. J. L. Jaini Trust but our efforts did not bear fruit.

Some enthusiastic Jains wishing to avail of the presence in the Capital of India of over 800 delegates of 80 countries of the world in UNESCO Conference and 100 delegates to the Buddhism seminar thought of holding a seminar on Jainism and universal peace and Exhibition of Jain Art and Culture. One of the main items for the seminar was presentation of standard works on Jainism to the national libraries of foreign countries and to the eminent delegates of UNESCO Conference and Buddha Jayanti.

The idea was talked over to Shri 108 Acharya Deshbhushan Ji Maharaj who greatly appreciated it and advised that the sacred works of the Jains should be immediately republished on this occasion. The present edition has been possible only because of his zeal and untiring efforts. Under his direction a few benevolent Jains readily came forward to donate for the entire paper required for this publication. Acharya Shri under his direct supervision got the text typed for press purposes and looked to the minutest detail at all stages.

Acharya Shri is a Digamber Jain saint of the highest order and is always engrossed in meditation and self study. The community greatly needs teachers like him, under whose able guidance the society can make remarkable progress.

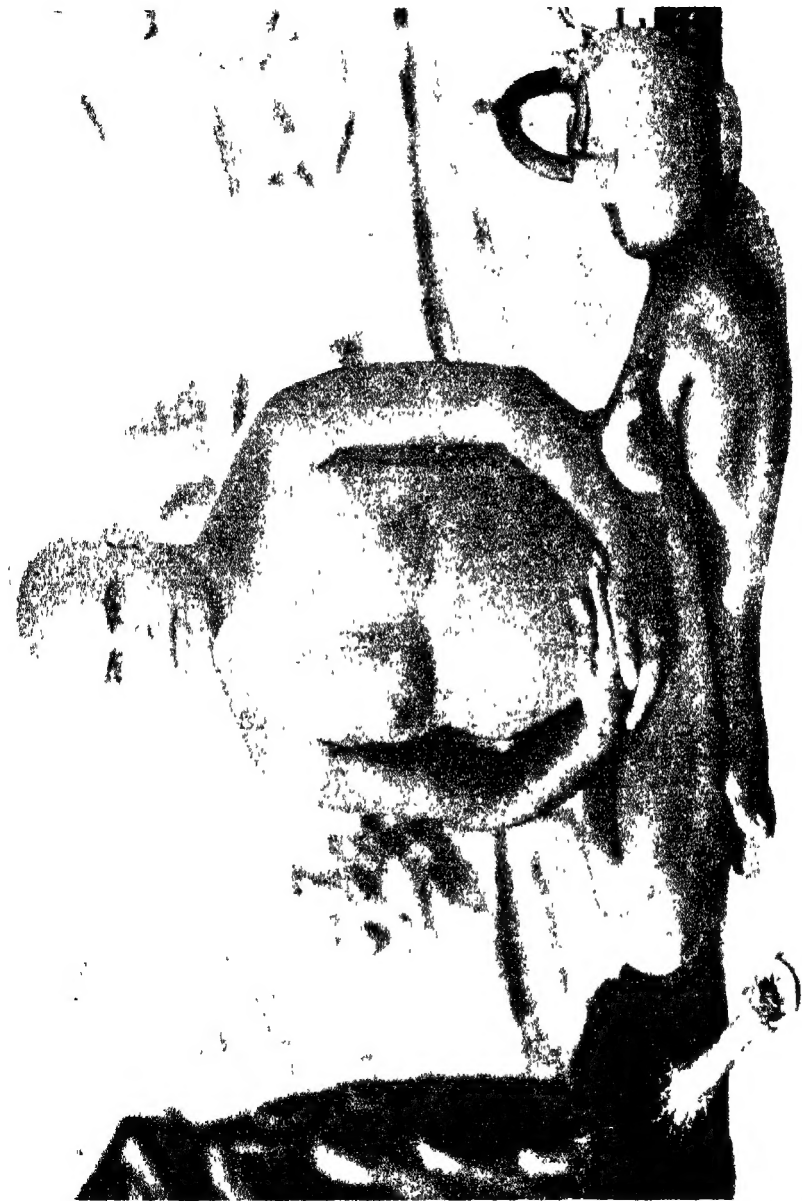
Paper for the publication having been so arranged upon we took it ourselves to go in for this much needed publication.

We are extremely grateful to the trustees of R.B.J.L. Jaini Trust who readily accorded us permission for re-printing of this book. We also express our gratitude to our benevolent Jain friends who have borne the entire cost of the paper used in this publication.

Our thanks are due to Shri Basheshar Nath Jain, Pahari Dhiraj Delhi and Shree Munendra Kumar Jain, M. A. J. D. who have helped us at all stages in bringing out this publication in such a short time.

Delhi
30th November, 1956

Adishwar Prasad Jain M. A.
for Controlling Authority
BARRISTER CHAMPAT RAI
Jain Trust DELHI.



Shri 108 Vidyalandkar Acharya Desh Bhushan Maharaj

INTRODUCTION

The author of *Tatvartha Sutra* is the most famous disciple of the universally worshipped saint, Kundakunda. This relationship between Kundakunda and Umasvami is established by an inscription, No. 108, written in 1365 Saka, found at Sravana Belgola in Mysore. (*Siddhanta Bhaskara* Nos. 2 and 3, pp. 117 and 122, also No. 4, 51. p. Cf. also the Gurvavali in Pandavapurana, by Sri Subha Chandra about 1600 Vikrama Samvat.)

As Kundakunda was a Griddhrapichecharay, so his disciple Umasvami also was called one. For in some MSS. of *Tatvartha Sutra*, a shloka is found appended in the end:

तत्त्वार्थं सूत्रकर्तारि गृद्ध्रपिच्छोपलक्षितम् ।
बंदे गणीन्द्र संयातम् उयास्वामी मुनीश्वरम् ॥

The age of Kundakunda and Umasvami is well-established. The tradition is universal and is adverted to in all Jain books found in Jain Libraries all over. Old written MSS. in the bhandaras of Jaipur and Idar also bear it out. (See also *Indian Antiquary*, Vol. XXI, mentioned in Bhaskara No. 4., pp. 78 and 204).

The age was so correct as to the central tradition of Jainism that the works of these two Great Saints command universal acceptance and reverence, both from the Svetambaras and Digambaras

Place of *Tatvartha Sutra* in Jain Sacred Literature

Our revered author, Sri Umasvami, flourished A. V.714—798. If Lord Mahavira attained Nirvana in 527 B.C., then Umasvami lived 135—219 A.D. This is roughly the tradition. Anyhow, *Tatvartha Sutra* is a very old book, more than 1700 years old. It falls at the very opening of the period when the great omniscient successors of Vira disappeared, and the later Pontiffs began to rise. Thus, as to date, its place is in the second half of the first millennium after Vira.

As to the 4 Divisions of Jaina Literature, Cosmology, History, Philosophy and Ritual, *Tatvartha Sutra* has its place in Philosophy (*Dravyanuyoga*.)

As to the old non-extant Literature, *Tatvartha Sutra* has descended from the sixth Anga, Jnatridharmakatha, and the second *Purva*, Agrayini.

As to extant Literature, it is nearly at the end of the submerged tradition of Vira and Gautama's Word (about 600 B.C.), of the wisdom of the two *Bhadrabaus* (400 B. C.), and then forms the first glorious successor of the great works of *Kundakundacharya* (100 A. D.), and then looks forward about the same distance of time ahead to the learned and lucid Prakrit Gathas of *Sri Nemi Chandra Siddhanta Chakravati*. (1000 A. D.)

IMPORTANCE AND SANCTITY OF TATVARTHA SUTRA

The book contains only 10 short chapters, but its value is in inverse proportion to its size. It is revered both by the *Digambara* and *Svatmbara* sections of the Jain community. The whole of Jain philosophy is taught in it. There is no Jain doctrine or dogma, which is not expressed or implied in these aphorisms. Verily *Tatvartha Sutra* is a sacred epitome of Jainism.

It is recited by millions of mouths every day, in temples and in private houses. Indeed, it is held that one recitation of this book brings as much pious merit as a fast of one day.

दशाध्याये परिच्छिन्ने तत्त्वार्थे पठिते सति ।

फलस्यादुपवासस्य भाषितं श्रुतिपुंगवै ॥

It is deservedly the text-book of the religion of *Tirthamkaras par excellence*. How great and authoritative it is recognised to be will be further evident from the fact that it is perhaps the most commented-upon book in Jain Literature. No less than 31 commentaries of it are known to be extant now,

AUTHOR'S LIFE

Very little is known at present of the life of the Author. His name was Umasvami, or, according to the Svetambara version Umasvati. His spiritual descent is given below.

It is known that Umasvami renounced the world at the early age of 19 years. He remained an ascetic for 25 years. Then he became the head of ascetics (Acharya). From these we get the following brief sketch of dates in his life.

A very interesting story is told of how this Great Gem of a Jain sacred book came to be written.

In Gujarat (Saurashtra) there lived a Jain layman, Dvaipayaka. He was a very pious man and withal learned in Jaina religious lore. He was anxious to write some really great Jain book. But worldly cares forbade the execution of such an unworldly undertaking. To conquer this obstacle, he made a vow not to take his food unless he had made at least one aphorism every day. Thus if he missed adding one aphorism to his book any day he had to go fasting for that day. For the theme of his book he took *Liberation*. And put his resolve that very day in practice. He thought out and made the first aphorism as : *ईशं ज्ञानं चरित्राणि मोक्षं मार्गः* Belief-knowledge-conduct (united constitute) the path to Liberation. Fearing lest he should forget it, he transcribed it upon a side of a pillar in his house.

Next day Dvaipayaka chanced to go away from his home on some business. In his absence his house was visited by a Saint.

The wife of Dvaipayaka, herself a pious woman, received the Saint and entertained him. The Saint's eyes fell upon the aphorism on the pillar. He thought over it for a moment and then added the word *सत्यम्* before it, and departed.

When Dvaipayaka returned and saw the correction in his aphorism, he questioned his wife. She had not seen the Saint do it, and said so, but suggested to the husband that it must have been made by the Saint.

The layman-author on this ran at once to find out the noble Saint to whom he was indebted for such an-invaluable and redical correction. He came upon an order of monks at the outskirts of the town and saw the head of the order sitting in his radiant peace.

He at once concluded that this must be the Saint. He fell at the feet of the Saint and made a most humble and heart-felt entreaty that the work was beyond his poor layman's wits and that the saint should oblige him and the world by completing the book, the first aphorism of which had been corrected by the Saint in such a providential manner. The Saint was moved by compassion and finished the book.

This Saint was none other than our *Umasvami*, and the completed book is *Tatvartha Sutra*.

The book is an exposition of the 7 Principles of Jainism, i. e., the 7 *Tatvas*.

The opening *Sutra* serves the purpose of an Introduction, Justification and Recapitulation of the whole book. It was necessary to indicate the position of the Principles (*Tatva*) in the whole range of Jain Knowledge. They are the subject-matter of right belief, and the relation of the two can not be appreciated fully, unless we consider the position of right belief in the scheme of Jain philosophy. This position is indicated by the first *Sutra*. This brings us to the Justification also. The first purpose of everything Living is Happiness to be worth anything must be eternal, faultless and independent. Such happiness is identical with the Jaina conception of Liberation. Right belief in and right knowledge of the 7 Principles, along with a life led in the light of the knowledge, and firmly established on the basis of the belief is the sole threefold path of final and everlasting deliverance. Thus the first *Sutra* is a justification of the book which deals with these basic principles of belief and action. It is also a Recapitulation, because the whole book can easily be seen to be merely an expansion of the various aspects, details and developments of this mighty and all comprehensive *Sutra* of Jainism.

The ground-plan of the book itself admits of analysis as follows:

The whole book consists of 357 *Sutras*, divided into 10 chapters with 33, 53, 39, 42, 42, 27, 39, 26, 47, and 9 *Sutras* respectively.



श्री जैनाचार्य उमास्वामी विरचित

तत्त्वार्थ सूत्रम्

TATVARTHA SUTRAM

Saudharama Indra enquired the gist of the following verses from Indrabhuti Gautama with a view to bring him before Lord Mahavira.

त्रैकाल्य द्रव्यषट्कं नवपदसहितं जीवषट्कायलेश्याः ।

पंचान्वेचास्तिकाया व्रतसमितिज्ञानचारित्रभेदाः ॥

इत्येतन् मोक्षमूलं त्रिभुवनमहितैः प्रोक्तमर्हद्विरीशैः ।

प्रत्येति श्रद्धधाति स्पृहाति च मतिमान् यः स वै शुद्धदृष्टिः ॥

i. e. "Three (divisions of) Time, (Present, Past and Future), six *Dravyas* (substances),¹ with nine *Padarthas* (categories),² six kinds of embodied souls,³ six thought-points⁴, the five *Astikayas* (embodied substances)⁵, the five *Vratas* (vows)⁶, the five kinds of *Samiti* (carefulness)⁷, the five kinds of *Gati* (conditions of existence)⁸, the five kinds of *Jnana* (knowledge),⁹ the five kinds of *Charitra* (conduct)¹⁰, these are the root principles of liberation, as described by *Arhats* [the adored ones] who are perfect and the great lords of the three worlds, (upper, middle and lower). The wise man who knows these, is convinced of them, and who realises these, is verily one who has attained right belief.

These two Gathas of *Prakrit Language* are on the basis of *Bhagwati Aradhana*.

सिद्धे जयप्पसिद्धे चउविह्व आराहणाफलं पत्ते ।

वदित्ता अरहंते वोच्च आराहणा कमसो ॥

(2) Having bowed to the *Siddhas* (liberated ones) who are renowned in the universe and who have gained the fruits of four kinds of *Aradhana* (devotion), and to the *Arhats* (the adored ones) I shall speak of the devotions in their order.

उज्ज्वलमृज्ज्वलं गिष्महृणं साहृणं च गित्थरणं ।
दसण-गाण-चरित्तं तकाकामराहणा भणिया ॥

This verse is originated in *Sarvarth Siddhi* by its author Shri Pujyapad Acharya

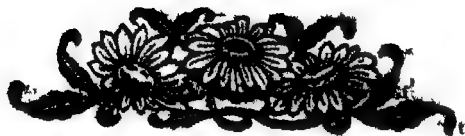
(3) Right belief, right knowledge, right conduct and right austerities are called the *Aradhana*s. These should enlighten the mind, be pursued, continued, grasped firmly and carried on to perfection.

Shri Umaswami Acharya with a view to advise the Path of Liberation starts the *Tatvarth Sutra* with the following *sutra* :-

मंगलाचरणम्

मोक्षमार्गस्य नेतारं भेत्तारं कर्मभूताम् ।
जातारं विश्वतत्त्वानां बंदे तद्गुणलब्धये ॥

(4) I bow to him who is the guide on the path to liberation, the destroyer of mountains of *Karmas* and the Knower of the principles of the universe, so that I may attain these qualities belonging to him.



प्रथम अध्याय

FIRST CHAPTER

SUTRA 1

सम्यग्दर्शनज्ञानचारित्र्याणि मोक्षमार्गः ॥ १ ॥

Samyagdarsana jnanacharित्रani moksha-margah- (1)

सम्यग्दर्शन *Samyagdarsana*, Right Darsana (belief) सम्यग्ज्ञान *Samyag-jnana*, Right Jnana (knowledge) सम्यक्चारित्र्य *Samyak Charitra*, Right Charitra (conduct) मोक्षमार्गः *Moksha-margah*, the path to liberation.

1, Right belief, (right) knowledge, (right) conduct, these (together constitute) the path to liberation.

COMMENTARY

Right belief, Right knowledge and Right conduct are called the three gems (*Ratna-traya*) in Jain works. Each of these three can be considered in its three-fold aspect, viz, the subject, the object, and the means. For example, in right belief there is the believer, that which is believed and the means of belief. Similarly in right knowledge there is the knower, the known and the means of knowledge and in right conduct we have the pursuer of conduct, the conduct itself and the means of conduct.

Every mundane soul is embodied and exists in combination with *Karmas*. In a pure soul this partnership between the soul and *Karmas* is dissolved. The soul attains liberation (*Moksha*). Then in self-absorption (*Svasamaya*) it enjoys for ever its own qualities consisting, among others, of the infinite quaternary (*Ananta-chatustaya*) viz, infinite conation, infinite knowledge, infinite Power and infinite bliss.

The way to liberation on the attainment of which the soul will be freed from *Karmas* and possessed of the aforesaid qualities with others lies in right belief, right knowledge and right conduct. To attain liberation all the three must be simultaneously pursued. The path may be compared to a ladder with its two side-poles and the central rungs or rounds forming the steps. The side-poles are right belief and right knowledge and the steps, graded steps of right

conduct. We can go up the ladder only when all the three are sound. The absence of one makes ascent impossible. Thus a simultaneous pursuit of right belief, right knowledge and right conduct is enjoined here.

Of those three, right belief is the basis upon which the other two rests. It is an essential preliminary to right knowledge. It is the cause and right knowledge is the effect, Right knowledge always implies it. Similarly right conduct is preceded and caused by right knowledge, and implies both right knowledge and right belief. For this reason, in the aphorism we find right belief mentioned first, then right knowledge and lastly right conduct.

SUTRA 2.

तत्त्वार्थं अज्ञानं सम्यग्दर्शनम् ॥ २ ॥

Tatvartha-śradhanam Samyagdarsanam- (2)

Belief or conviction in things ascertained as they are, (is) right belief.

तत्त्वार्थं *Tatvartha* तत्त्व *Tatva* really means thatness, a thing as it is, अर्थ *Artha* means that which is ascertained. तत्त्वार्थं *Tatvaratha* means things ascertained as they are.

Tatvas may be translated as the Principles of Jainism.

तत्त्वार्थं *Tatvartha*—तत्त्वेन—अर्थः

- By thatness ascertained object.
- Object which is ascertained by thatness.
- That which is ascertained by it own thatness.
- Objects as they are.

सम्यक्त्व *Samyaktva* or सम्यग्दर्शन, *Samyagdarsna*, is of 2 kinds :—

संसारसम्यक्त्व. *Sarag Samyaktva*, belief with attachment. This is indexed by the 4 signs of :—

(1) प्रमत्त *Prashama*, calmness, non-operation of error-feeding passions and of deluding *Karmas*.

(2) संवेग *Samvega*, fear of mundane existence in 5 cycles of wanderings :—अणु *Dravya*, matter, क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, place, काल *Kala*, time, भाव *bhava*, thought-condition of existence, भावः *bhava*, thought-activity.

(3) अनुकम्पा *Anukampa*, compassion for all living beings (mobile, जन्तु *Jantu* and स्थवरा *Sthaavara*, im-mobiles).

(4) अस्तिक्य *Astikya*, belief in the principles, soul, non-soul, etc.
वितरग सम्यक्त्व *Vitrage Samyaktva*, belief without attachment, i.e. the
purity of the soul itself.

SUTRA 3

तन्निस्तर्गादिधिगमाद्वा ॥ ३ ॥

Tannisargadadhigamadva - (3)

This (right belief is attained) by :—

(1) निस्तर्ग *Nisargaj*, intuition, independently of the precept for
others, or

(2) अधिगम *Adhigamaj* intuition, acquisition of knowledge from
external sources, e. g. by precept of others or reading the scriptures.

In reality, right belief is the result of:—

(1) उपशम *Upashama*, subsidence,

(2) क्षयोपशम *Kshayopashama*, destruction-subsidence or partial
subsidence, destruction and operation, and,

(3) क्षय *Kshaya*, destruction, of दशान मोहनीय कर्म *Darshana Mohniya*
Karma [right-belief-deluding Karmas] and, the four अनन्तानुबन्धी कलम
Anantanubandhi Kashaya, the four error-feeding passions.

These are internal, but there are external causes as:—

(1) द्रव्य *Dravya*, matter, e. g., images of adorable अर्हत *Arhat*,
precept, remembrance of the past lives, etc.

(2) क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, place, e. g., समवसरण *Samavasarna*, Hall of Audi-
ence or where the Lord preach the Truth.

(3) काल *Kala*, time, i. e., right belief is attained only when the inter-
val to the souls :—attaining liberation is less than half the time taken
by one soul in its matter cycle, i. e. in its embodiments in all matter.
(अर्द्ध पुद्गल परिवर्तन, *Ardhapudgala-parivartana*.)

(4) भाव कर्म *Bhava Karma*, thought-activity, this is called efficiency,
or कर्म *Karma*. It is the 5th of the लब्धि *Labdhis*. The five *labdhis*
attainments, are:—

क्षयोपशम लब्धि *Kshayopashama labdhi*, destructive-subsidential attain-
ment, attainment by a soul (by the subsidence, destruction and operat-
ion of certain *Karmas*) of such senses, mind, etc., that he may be
able to acquire right belief.

विशुद्धि लब्धि *Vishuddhi labdhi*, virtue attainment, attainment of a disposition for good and against bad actions.

देशना लब्धि, *Deshana labdhi*, precept attainment, attainment of an inclination to know the Truth. This reduces the स्थिति *Sthiti*, duration of *Karmas* except the आयुकर्म *Ayukarma*, the age *Karma*, to a maximum of कोटी कोटी *Koda kodi*, ~~crores~~ of crores and a minimum of one crore सगर *Sagar*.

प्रायोग्यलब्धि *Prayogya labdhi*, competency attainment, attainment of thought-activity which further reduces the स्थिति *Sthiti*, duration of the 7 *Karmas* i.e., all except the आयुकर्म *Ayukarma*, age *Karma*. But as to intensity of fruition the reduction applies only to demeritorious *Karmas*. The meritorious *Karmas* are proportionally increased in intensity of fruition (अनुभाग *Anubhaga*).

कार्यलब्धि *Karya labdhi*, efficiency attainment, attainment of thought activity which must cause right belief in अन्तरमुहूर्त *Antar muharta*, within 48 minutes. Of these 5, the last can be attained only by a soul capable of attaining liberation and the remaining four by all.

SUTRA 4

जीवाजीवास्वबन्धसंवरनिर्जरा मोक्षास्तत्त्वम् ॥ ४ ॥

Jiva-jivasrava bandha Samvara nirjara moksha tatvam (4)

The तत्त्व *Tatvas*, principles (are) जीव *Jiva*, soul अजीव *Ajiva*, non-soul, आस्रव *Asrava*, inflow (of karmic matter into the soul) बन्ध *bandha*, bondage [of soul by karmic matter], संवर *Samvara*, stoppage [of inflow of karmic matter into the soul], निर्जरा *Nirjara*, shedding [of karmic matter by the soul (and) मोक्ष *Moksha*, Liberation [of soul from matter]

Note 1. Soul's characteristic is चेतना *Chetna*, consciousness It is of 3 kinds :-

ज्ञानचेतना *Jnana chetana*, consciousness or experience of pure knowledge in its full extent, it is found only in the Omniscient, but it begins to be experienced from the 4th spiritual stage of development

2. कर्मचेतना *Karma chetana*, consciousness of experience of action

3. फलफल चेतना *Karma phala chetana*, experience of fruition of *karmas*

अजीव *Ajiva*, non-soul is that which is devoid of all these 3 kinds of consciousness.

Note 2. Many Sacred books treat of 9 पदार्थ *Padarthas*, categories. They add to these 7 *tatvas*, पुण्य *Punya* and पाप *Papa*, merit and demerit. But these two are really included in the third and fourth

principles, *अस्रवः* *Asrava* and *बन्धः* *Bandha*, the inflow into and bondage of the soul by good or bad Karmic matter according to merit or demerit [treated of in Chapter VIII, 25, 26, below] is the active cause.

Note 3. These 7 तत्त्व *tatva*, principles, are evidently necessary and sufficient. They are necessary, because there must be at least two exhaustive categories of the universe. By dichotomy they are logically perfect. They are the soul and the non-soul. Their union is manifest in the world. The absolute liberation of soul from the non-soul is the ultimate goal, therefore मोक्ष *Moksha*, category is placed last in the सूत्र *Sutras*. Its immediate causes are stoppage and shedding of Karmas. Therefore संवरा *Samvara* and निवरा *Nirvara* precede मोक्ष *Moksha*, in the enumeration. Stoppage and shedding are necessitated by the inflow and bondage of karmic matter, therefore अस्रवः *Asrava* and बन्धः *Bandha* are given as the third and fourth categories. Thus we see that the 7 *tatvas* are necessary.

They are sufficient also. Soul and non-soul together constitute the universe. If they are separated, nothing more is needed. If they are united, as they are found to be in the world, then the cause of their union, the union itself the stoppage and the gradual and then the final destruction of the union are the only possible ways of considering them. Thus the seven principles are sufficient also.

तत्त्व *tatvas* substances are only two, soul and non-soul. Non-soul is all that is not soul. Therefore the really knowable and worth-knowing object is the soul. In गीता *Githa* 20 of दर्शन पाद *Darsana Padha* it is said, निश्चयो ह्ययं सत्यम् "Nichchaya do appanam Hava sammatam" i. e. in reality soul's own nature is सत्यदर्शन *Samyag darsana*. Belief, experiential belief in real soul itself is *Samyag darsana*. Does not the Greek philosopher also teach us: "know thyself," "Gnothi seauton."

SUTRA 5

नामस्थापनाद्रव्यभावतस्तन्मयाः ॥५॥

Nama sthapana dravya bhavatas tannnyasah-(5)

By *Nama*, name, *Sthapana*, representation, *Dravya*, privation, *Bhava*, present condition, their नाम *Nyasa*, aspects, (are known).

They (सत्यदर्शन *right belief*, etc., and ज्ञान *soul*, non-soul, etc.,) can be considered in four aspects or निष्पेक्ष *Nishksha*.

(1) नाम निक्षेप *Nama nikshepa*, name or negative aspect, that is the name is attributed for the mere naming of the object which does not possess the qualities connoted by the name. As a man may be called King or Smith even if he is neither a king nor a smith.

(2) स्थापना निक्षेप *Sthapana nikshepa*, representative aspect. Representation of one thing by another. e. g., installation of Lord Mahavira in a marble or diamond image. Or in Algebra, taking X to be equal to so and so. The first is called तदाकारस्थापना, *Tadakara sthapana* or सद्भाव *Sadbhavo*, i. e., the representative and the represented are similar in figure; the other is अतदाकार स्थापना, *Atadakara sthapana* or असद्भाव *Asad-bhava*, i. e., the representative bears no resemblance to what is represented. Such representation of the अवतार *Arhats* (the Adored ones) is not allowed in this हुन्दा अवतारपिण्डि, *Hunda Avasarpini*, the aeon of decrease in which there are special features of decrease e. g., birth of a daughter to a तीर्थङ्कर *Tirthankara*, etc.

(3) द्रव्य निक्षेप *Dravya nikshepa* privative aspect. The absence of an attribute in a subject which it possessed in the past or must possess in the future, the attributing of a name, the qualities of which one does not possess now, although one possessed them in the past or is sure to possess them in the future. e. g., a Dowager queen may still be called queen, and a dethroned monarch may be called a king after deposition also, and a President-elect may well be called the President.

Take the Professor of Surgery :-

(1) He is dining. He knows Surgery but is not attentive to it now. To call him Professor of Surgery is आगमद्रव्य निक्षेप, *Agama Dravya Nihksepa*.

(2) But if we think of his body only, then we have नो आगम द्रव्य निक्षेप *No Agama dravya Nihksepa*.

e.g., (1) ज्ञायक सरिर, *Jnayaka Sarira*.

(i) He is asleep. To call his body, the Professor of Surgery is वर्तमान, *Vartmana*.

(ii) He has ceased to be Professor of Surgery and has become a baker. To call his body, the Professor of Surgery, till his death, is अनगत, *Anagata*.

(iii) He dies and is in his coffin. To call the body, the Professor of Surgery is अतीत, *Atita*.

(2) *Bhavi*. He is going to be born a king. To call his body a king's body is *Bhavi*.

(3) *Tadvyatirika*.--

(i) The Professor was a great and practical philanthropist and had otherwise done deeds to secure rebirth, as a king. To attribute to his body the karmic matter of these deeds is *कर्म*, *Karma*.

(ii) To attribute the actual particles of which his kingly body will be formed is *नो कर्मनो आगम इत्यनिशेष*, *No Karma no agam dravya nikshepa*.

(4) *भावी निशेष*, *Bhavi nikshepa*, Positive aspect or present condition. It signifies the possession of its present attributes. Giving a thing a name connoting the attributes of its present condition only. e. g., a General considered as in actual command of his army. It is also *आगम*, *Agama*, i.e., when the soul knows and is actually attentive, and *नोआगम*, *Noagama*, when the actual present condition of a material thing is referred to.

नाम निशेष, *Nama nikshepa*, *Nama* means mere name, *Nikshepa* is a verbal or nominal or linguistic aspect. The *सप्ततत्त्व*, *Sapta tatva*, seven names of Principles apply to the Principles, but they may even be given to something which is not a *तत्त्व* *tatva*, Principle. e.g. *आस्रव* *Asrava*, in Buddhism means "sin". This is *नाम निशेष* *Nama Nikshepa*, from the Jaina point of view. That is, a thing bears the name without having the qualities indicated by it. It is merely a linguistic process for the convenience of argument and consideration. In language it serves the same purpose as the symbolic letters used in Algebra.

Name applied to something which does not possess the qualities, connoted now. It is *Sathapna* or *Dravya*.

स्थापना निशेष, *Sthapana Nikshepa*, Attributed connotation as an actor playing a king or a warrior i. e., a thing bears a connotation, which in reality it does not possess and can not possess.

द्रव्य निशेष, *Dravya Nikshepa*, taking the potential for the actual.

In *स्थापना*, *Sthapana*, the connotation is merely attributed. It is never there. It cannot be there. In *द्रव्य*, *Dravya*, it will be there or has been there. The common factor between the two is that it is not there now and to that extent the connotation is fictitious in both.

Name applied to a thing which does possess the qualities connoted now:--

भवा निशेष *Bhava Nikshepa*. The first three *निशेष*, *Nikshepa*, are from the *द्रव्यनिदान*, *Dravyarthika Naya*, from the substantia

standpoint. The last भावनिक्षेप, *Bhava Nikshepa* is from the पर्यायार्थिकनय *paryayarthika Naya* modal standpoint.

निक्षेप, *Nikshepa*, is merely the way in which the word is used.

This is most important in Jainism, in view of the स्वाभाव *Syadvada* system of Jain Logic. A confusion in the निक्षेप, *Nikshepa*, would be a fruitful source of ambiguity and double meanings. This सूत्र, *Sutra* lays down the necessary safeguard against this. All the सप्ततत्त्व *seven tatvas* of सूत्र *Sutra* 4, supra, can be considered in these 4 aspects, e.g.—

1. (i) जीव *Jiva* नामजीव *Nama Jiva*, e. g. giving the name of जीव *Jiva*, to objects which do not have all the attributes of *Jiva*, *Jiva* as a तत्त्व, *tatva*, i. e., in its reality, has the four infinities of conation knowledge, power and bliss.

Mundane souls do not possess these, but still we call them जीव *Jiva*. A still clearer example will be to give a boat the name of Elizabeth. (As in English, a man may be called Mr. Hill or Mr. Fox).

(ii) स्थापना जीव *Sthapana Jwa*. As the image of Lord Mahavira.

It is not महावीर, *Mahavira*, the omniscient still we worship it as such. As also a photo of a friend, which is loved and respected as its original.

(iii) द्रव्य जीव *Dravya Jiva*, as to call the, अर्हंत, *Arahats*, सिद्ध *Siddhas*. An अर्हंत *Arhat* soul is sure to become a Liberated Soul. As a lecturer may be called a lecturer, even when he is not lecturing, but is at his dinner.

(iv) भाव जीव, *Bhava Jiva*. A human soul to be called a human soul only. A mundane soul to be called a mundane soul only. A Liberated soul only to be called a real, ideal soul.

II. अजीव *Ajiva*. Here consider पदार्थ *Pudgala* or matter, sub-division of *Ajiva*.

(i) नाम अजीव, *Nama Ajiva*, calling a man a block-head or giving him the name of Hill, Wood or Rice, the names here are given merely as names, although the human being can never be mere dead, inert-matter.

(ii) स्थापना अजीव *Sthapana Ajiva*. As a model of man-of-war. As representing an arch in a circus by human performers or representations of rivers and mountains on a level map.

(iii) द्रव्य अजीव, *Dravya Ajiva*. As calling a broken carriage, a carriage, when instead of carrying others, it has to be carried itself,

(iv) भव भजिव, *Bhava Ajiva*. Calling a ship, a ship, and so on.

III. आसव, *Asrava*. (i) नाम आसव, *Nama Asrava*, as calling the सिद्ध, *Siddha*, महावीर, *Mahavira*, the remover of physical ills.

Any such conscious removing of ill implies desire, which means inflow of karmic matter into the soul. In the Liberated state, this is impossible, therefore the आसव *Asrava*, attributed is only in name.

(ii) स्थापना आसव *Sthapana Asrava* as attributing fearfulness to a black and hideous image or gentle kindness to the picture or statue of a philanthropist. Here the image or statue has no thought of frightening or pleasing us and therefore we simply attribute these आसव, *Asrava* -- inducing qualities to it.

(iii) द्रव्य आसव, *Dravya Asrava*. As a man whom we have observed to be angry, is not so now and we still say :- "This is a wrathful man.

(iv) भाव आसव, *Bhava Asrava*. Speaking of the inflow only where it exists, e. g., the inflow due to anger in an angry man.

IV. (i) नाम बन्ध *Nama Bandha*, बंध, *Bandha*. O' God, you smote my enemies. Here the act of smiting implies desire and therefore bondage. But a liberated soul can have nothing to do with it. It is only attributed bondage

(ii) स्थापना बन्ध, *Sthapana Bandha*. As a group of sculpture representing a butcher, slaughtering a cow or a hunter killing a she-deer. Here the bondage due to the slaughtering and killing is represented by the sculpture.

(iii) द्रव्य बन्ध, *Dravya Bandha*. As a man who has worked away the bondage of karmic matter due to, say, an act of stealing and has become a pious man, is called a thief, as if the old bondage still clung to him.

(iv) भावबन्ध, *Bhava Bhandha*. Predication of bondage only where it exists. As a liar is bound by the matter due to the lie.

V. संवर, *Samvara*, (i) नाम संवर, *Nama Samvara*. As an angry but weak man, not returning the blow of his assailant, walks away in silence. To say that he has a very forgiving spirit, is *Nama Samvara*, because forgiveness implies the stoppage of the inflow of karmas due to anger and it is not present here.

(ii) स्थापना संवर, *Sthapana Samvara*. As in the figure or statue of a woman, who looks the very picture of chastity. Here the stoppage of the karmic inflow which unchastity would have caused is represented by the figure.

(iii) द्रव्य संकर, *Dravya Samvara*. As calling a तीर्थंकर *Tirthankara*, before he has renounced the world, a वीतराग *Vitrāga* or free from attachment, is *Dravya Samvara*. He is not a *Vitarga* yet, but is sure to become so.

(iv) बाध संकर, *Bava Samvara*. Speaking of संकर *Samvara*, as it really exists. e. g., calling only that man वीतराग, *Vitrāga*, who has subdued all his passions.

VI. निर्जरा, *Nirjara*. (i) नाम निर्जरा, *Nama Nirjara*. A man is seemingly engaged in austerities, but his thoughts wander out to worldly objects. He is not really ridding his soul of matter. If one who does not know this says that the man is getting rid of *karmas*, it would be *Nama Nirjara*, i. e., attributing *Nirjara* where it does not really exist.

(ii) स्थापना निर्जरा, *Sthapana Nirjara*. e. g., the representation of *Nirjara* by the contemplative posture of a saint in a picture or in an image.

(iii) द्रव्य निर्जरा *Dravya Nirjara*. As saying of a तीर्थंकर *Tirthankara* when he is still a house-holder, that he is born ascetic. This is *Dravya Nirjara*, as the *Tirthankara* is sure to become an ascetic and get rid of karmic matter.

(iv) भाव निर्जरा *Bhava Nirjara*. Attributing *Nirjara*, when the shedding of karmic matter is actually going on.

VIII. मोक्ष *Moksha*. (i) नाममोक्ष *Nama, Moksha*. As a much harassed debtor on paying off his last debt may exclaim:—

"This is my liberation. " This can not mean *Moksha* and yet word used connoted it. *Moksha* is claimed by one who has not got it. This is only नाम मोक्ष *Nama Moksha*.

(ii) स्थापना मोक्ष *Sthapana, moksha* e.g., Liberation is represented by the figure of a सिद्ध, *Siddha*. This figure is an image of brilliance, as the Liberated Soul are described to be in सिद्धक्षेत्र, *Sidha Khsetra*, the half-moon-shaped space at the summit of the Universe, which is the abode of *Siddhas*.

(iii) द्रव्य मोक्ष, *Dravya Moksha*. To call the *Arhats, Siddhas Arhats* are sure to become *Siddhas*, but as *Arhats* they are not *Siddhas*.

(iv) भाव मोक्ष, *Bhava Moksha*. Attributing *Moksha* only to Liberated Souls.



SUTARA 6

प्रमाण नयैरधिगमः (६)

Pramana Nayairadhi gamah--(6)

अधिगम *Adhigama* is knowledge that is derived from tuition, external sources, e.g. precept and scriptures. It is attained by (means of) *Pramana* and *Naya*.

प्रमाण *Pramana*. Authority by means of which we test direct or indirect right knowledge of the self and the non self in all their aspects.

नय *Naya*. a stand-point which gives partial knowledge of a thing in some particular aspect of it.

Note—Right belief is not identical with faith. Its authority is neither external nor autocratic. It is reasoned knowledge. It is a sort of a sight of a thing. You cannot doubt its testimony. So long as there is doubt, there is no right belief. But doubt must not be suppressed. It must be destroyed. Things have not to be taken on trust. They must be tested and tried by every one on self. This सूत्र *Sutra* lays down the mode in which it can be done. It refers the enquirer to the first laws of thought and to the universal principles of all reasoning, that is, to logic, under the names of प्रमाण *Praman* and नय *Naya*.

प्रमाण *Pramana*, is authority. It is:—

(i) प्रत्यक्ष *Pratyaksha*, i. e. direct self evident.

Like:—अवधि *Avadhi*, Visual.

मनः प्रवच *Manapravyaya*, Mental and

केवल *Kevala*, Perfect knowledge.

(ii) परोक्ष *Paroksha*, Mediate, indirect,

Like:—मति *Mati* Sensitive and

श्रुति *Shruti*, Scriptural knowledge.

नय *Naya*, is stand point. It is:—

(1) द्रव्यार्थिक *Dravyarthika*, Substantial, or

(2) परोक्षार्थिक *Paryayarthika*, Modal ?

The most prominent use of stand-points is, of course the स्याद्वाद *Syadvada* or सप्तभङ्गी *Sapta-bhangi Naya*, of Jainism, i. e. the point of view of speech of seven kinds:—

"From some point of view a substance, is not, is and is not, is unpredicable, and again is and is unpredicable ? is not and is unpredicable, is and is not and is unpredicable:—

(1) स्यात् अस्ति *Syat Asti*, i. e. from the point of view of its own is own subject matter place, time and nature, the substance is i. e. exists as itself.

(2) स्यात् नास्ति *Syat Nasti*, i. e. from the point of view of the subject matter, place, time and nature of non-substance. it is, not i.e. it is not non-substance.

(3) स्यात् अस्ति नास्ति *Syat Asti Nasti*, i. e. from the point of view of the same quaternary relating to itself and non-substance, it may be said that substance is and is not if we make the statement successively.

(4) स्यात् अव्यक्तव्य *Syat Avaktva* i. e. if statement under *Syat Asti Nasti*, are attempted to be made of once, it can not be done. Thus a substance is unpredicable.

(5) स्यात् अस्ति अव्यक्तव्य *Syat Asti Avaktavya*, i. e. from the point of view of its own quaternary and at the same time from the joint quaternary of itself and non-substance, substance is and is also unpredicable.

(6) स्यात् नास्ति अव्यक्तव्य *Syat Nasti Avaktavya*, i. e. From the point of view of non-substance quaternary and at the same time from the joint quaternary of itself and non-substance, substance is not and is unpredicable.

(7) स्यात् अस्ति नास्ति अव्यक्तव्य *Syat Asti Nasti Avaktva*, i. e. from the point of view of its own quaternary and non-substance quaternary and at the same time from the joint quaternary of itself and non-substance, substance is and is not and is unpredicable.

(See *Panchastikaya Gatha 14*)

There are the Universal instruments for acquiring all kinds of knowledge.

But there are particular ways in which they can be usefully applied to right belief. Those ways are given in *Sutra 7th* and *8th*.

Sutra 6th gives the means of acquiring अग्निम् *Adhigama*.

Sutras 7th and *8th* give the modes of employing those means.



SUTRA 7

निर्देश स्वामित्व साधनसधिकरण स्थिति विधानतः ॥७॥

Nirdesa svamitva Sadhanadhi karana sthiti vidhanatah.

Adhigama is attained by (considering a Principle, or any substance with reference to its निर्देश *Nirdesh* (Description, Definition), स्वामित्व *Svamitva* (Possession, Inherence, कारण *Sadhan* (cause), अधिकरण *Adhikarana* (Place), स्थिति *Sthiti*, (Duration), and विधान *Vidhana* (Division).

Everything can be known by being treated in these six ways, e.g. man. He may be described as a rational animal, the qualities of rationality and animality inhere in all human beings, the cause of being a man is the sum-total of his own karmic energies, which acting through his parents caused him to be born in the world, his birth depends on his birth-place being such as human beings can be born in it, his duration, i.e. his life is determined and limited by his age or आयुक्रमे *Ayu karma*, and according to his nationality he may be divided into English, French, German, American, Japanese, etc., etc.,

We shall subject right belief to this six-fold treatment.

निर्देश *Nirdesha* Right belief is belief in things, ascertained as they are.

स्वामित्व *Svamitva* Generally it inhere in souls, which are capable of attaining liberation, and only in those who have got a mind, i.e. are मनस्क *Samanaska*.

साधन *Sadhan* Cause of right belief, i. e.—

(1) अभ्यन्तर *Abhyantara*, internal. It is the making inoperative of the दर्शन मोहनीय *Darshana Mohaniya*, or the belief-obscuring *karmas*, and *Anantanubandhi Kashaya*, the 4 over feeding passions.

(2) बाह्य *Bahyya*, external. This is of two kinds :—

(i) निस्तर्ज *Nisargaja*, intuitive, e.g. remembrance of past lives, enduring of great pain, contemplation of the image of the जिन *Jinas* or *Tirthankaras*, and observation of the miraculous powers of the celestial beings.

(ii) अधिगमन *Adhigamaja*, acquired, e.g., by other precept or the scriptures.

अधिकरण *Adhikarana*, is also :—

(1) अभ्यन्तर *Internal*. It is the soul itself upon which right belief depends.

(2) वाक् External. It's कसनादी Trasa Nadi, mobile channel, i.e. that part of the Universe out side of which living beings with only one sense are found.

स्थिति Sthiti. The smallest duration of right belief is one अल्पं जगन्मूर्तु Jaghanya Antarmuharta, i.e., minimum, which consist of one आवलि Avali and one संयम Sanyam, instant. One Avali is the twinkling of an eye. In one Avali there are. Jaghanya yukta asamkhyta, or minimum plenteous innumerable Sanyam. A संयम Sanyam is an instant or unit of time, i.e., the time by an atom of matter in passing from one कालाणु Pradesha, i.e., from one point of space to the next. उत्क्रष्ट अल्पंमूर्तु Utkrishta or maximum Antar-muhurta, is equal to 48 minutes one Sanayam. The longest duration of right belief is eternity, e. g. the right belief of liberated souls.

विधान Vidhana. There are three main divisions :—

(1) औपशमिक Aupashamika, arises when the right belief deluding karmas and the four अनन्तानुबन्धी कषाय Anantanubandhi Kashaya, i.e., anger, pride, decict and greed which feed these karmas are made inoperative.

(2) क्षयोपशमिक Kshayopashamika, arises when there is part destruction subsidence and operation of the right-belief deluding karmas, and of the error-feeding passions.

(3) क्षयिक Kshayak, arises from a total destruction of the above This belief last for ever.

In a similar six-fold way the other principles जीव Jiva, अजीव Ajiva, etc., must be treated.

SUTRA 8

सत्संख्या क्षेत्र स्पर्शन कालान्तर भावाल्प बहुत्वैश्च ॥८॥

Sat Samkhya Ksetra Sparsana Kalantra Bhavalpa Bahutvaishch

(The eight principles are known) also by—

- (1) सत् Sat, Existence,
- (2) संख्या Samkhya, number, enumeration of kinds or classes,
- (3) क्षेत्र Kshetra, place, where the thing is found at the present time.
- (4) स्पर्शन Sparshana. Extent or the amount of space touched by it in all ages.
- (5) काल Kala, Time.

(6) अन्तर *Antara*, Interval (of Time).

(7) भव *Bhava*, Quality, i. e. that determinateness which is one with the being of the object.

(8) अल्प बहुल *Alpa-bahutva*, Quantity, the being so much with reference to a possible more or less, measurable or numerable amount.

By these 8 ways जीव *Jiva*, etc., can be known even more fully than by the 6 ways given above, e. g. जीव *Jiva*—

सत् *Sat*, *Jiva* exists. This is inferred from the fact of consciousness which is a characteristic of soul, and not found in any other substance. This consciousness persists in the soul in all its conditions of existence

संख्या *Samkhyā*. There is an infinity of souls. This is obvious from the infinite forms of embodied souls.

क्षेत्र *Kshetra*. Soul is found in the whole Universe.

स्पर्शन *Sparshana*. At some time or other, the soul touch the whole Universe.

काल *Kala*. The duration of soul is eternity.

अन्तर *Antara*. This means the interval between a condition of soul and its regaining that condition once more after losing it. For Example, a soul is embodied as a man, then he transmigrates to other forms of existence and then once more is embodied as a man, the interval between the two human embodiments is called अन्तर *Antara*

भाव *Bhava*. The soul has five kinds of vibrations, e. g., औदयिक *Audayika*, i. e. the vibrations set up in a soul by the coming into operation of the karmic matter.

अल्प बहुल *Alpa-bahutva*. This is naturally comparative. There are more souls embodied as vegetable-souls than air souls, and more as air souls than water, and more as water souls than earth-souls and more as earth souls than fire souls.

Now take the case of Liberated souls :

सत् *Sat*, Existence. Is permanent in substance, i. e. in *Jiva*, but there is natural brought-activity which owing to time may be said to be different or distinct for each passing moment. The test of सत् *Sat* is the inherence, in the object considered of the threefold qualities of Birth, Decay and Permanence. Birth and Decay both refer to the coming in to and going out of existence of condition. The substance, of course continues the same.

संख्या *Samkhyā*, Number, Infinite,

क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, Place. At the end of *Loka*.

स्पर्शन *Sparshana*, Possible extent. (Obbit). From the place of the soul attaining liberation to the end of *Loka*. Any point 2½ *dvipas* may be beginning, because the liberated soul attains *Siddhahood* there; and then its only natural and final movement is vertical and only up to the end of *Loka*.

काल *Kala*, Time (Real). The liberated soul takes one *samaya* to reach the end of *Loka*. It retains *Siddhahood* for an Infinite time.

अन्तर *Antara*, Interval of time. Between one soul attaining liberation and another, there may be an interval of one *Samyam*. and at the most of 6 months. As to space, every liberated soul has a form and it is distinct from that of the other liberated souls. But form is not necessarily an attribute of matter. It is the quality which makes a substance occupy space, which is called its pure form. It should be remembered, that matter is not the only substance according to *Jainism*. There are five others; one is space. Space gives place to everything else.

भाव *Bhava*, Quality. It's own पारिणामिक *Parinamika*, activity is soul's own quality. It's possession of the infinities of conation knowledge, power and bliss is its quality from another point of view; i. e., the absence of *Karmas* which obscure these.

अल्प बहुल *Alpa-bahutva*, Quantity. The size of it's form depends upon the size of the body of its last mundane incarnation. It is noticeable that Existence and number are really variants of द्रव्य *Dravya*, Substance;

Place and Possible Extent really variants of क्षेत्र *Kshetra*, Place :

Time and Interval really variants of काल *Kala*, Time and Quality and Quantity really variants of भाव *Bhava*, Quality.

SUTRA 9

मतिश्रुतावधिमतःपर्यायकेवलानिज्ञानम् ॥९॥

Mati Shrutavadhi Manah paryaya Kevalani Jnanam.

Right knowledge (is of five kinds) :—

मति *Mati*. Sensitive knowledge. Knowledge of the self and the non-self by means of the senses and the mind.

श्रुत *Shruta*. Scriptural knowledge. Knowledge derived from the reading or preaching of scriptures, or through an object known by sensitive knowledge.

अवयव Avadhi. Visual knowledge. Direct knowledge of matter in various degrees with reference to **द्रव्य Dravya**, subject matter, **क्षेत्र Kshetra**, space, **काल Kala**, time, and **गुण Bhava**, quality of the object known.

मनः मनः Manah paryay. Mental knowledge. Direct knowledge of another's mental activity about matter.

केवल Kevala. Perfect knowledge. Omniscience, knowledge of all things in all their aspects at all times.

Each of these five kinds of knowledge can be considered in its aspect of the knower, the knowledge and the means of knowing, so far as the soul is concerned. The outward substances which are known are not included in this,

श्रुत Shruta or scriptural knowledge is also called :—

आप्त वचन Apta Vachana.

आगम Agama.

उपदेश Upadesh.

वेतिहृद Atihaba.

आम्नाय Amnaya.

प्रवचन Pravachan.

जिन वचन Jina Vachan.

SUTRA 10

तत् प्रमाणे ॥१०॥

Tat-pramane

They (i. e., five kinds of knowledge are) the two *Pramanas* (and no others).

The *Pramanas* are of two kinds :—

प्रत्यक्ष Pratyaksha Direct. This is Visual (अवयव) Mental (मनः पार्याय) and Perfect (केवल) knowledge.

परोक्ष Paroksha, Indirect. This is Sensitive (मति) and श्रुत Scriptural knowledge.

But other systems of Philosophy believe in the following *Pramanas* :—

चार्वाक Charvaka believes in **प्रत्यक्ष Pratyaksha** (Perception) only.

बुद्ध वैशेषिक Buddha and Vaisheshika, believe in Perception and अनुमान Anumana (Inference).

संख्य Samkhya, believes in Perception, Inference and आगम Agama (Trustworthy affirmation).

नैयायिक Naiyayika, believes in Perception, Inference, Trustworthy affirmation and उपमान Upamana (comparison).

मीमांसक Mimamsaka, believes in Perception, Inference, Trustworthy affirmation, comparison, अर्थोपपत्ति Arthapatti (Presumption), and अभाव Abhava (Privation).

SUTRA 11

आद्यो परोक्षश्च ॥११॥

Adyao Paroksham.

The first two kinds of knowledge, i. e., अक्षि Sensitive and श्रुत Scriptural knowledge, are परोक्ष Paroksha i. e., Indirect or Mediate

Indirect is so-called as it is acquired by the external help of the senses (including the mind) or the Scriptures, or by the internal help. i. e., by the partial subsidence, destruction and operation क्षयोपशम Kshyopsham of the knowledge-observing karma.

SUTRA 12.

प्रत्यक्षमन्यत् १२

Pratyaksha Manyat.

The remaining three, i. e. अवधि Avadhi, visual, direct, material knowledge, मनः पार्याय Manah paryaya, Mental, direct mental knowledge and केवल Kevala, Perfect knowledge are प्रत्यक्ष Pratyaksha, i. e. directly known by the soul itself, without any external help.

Of these the Visual and Mental arise on the क्षयोपशम Kshayopashama, destruction, subsidence of knowledge-obscuring karmas. They are called देश प्रत्यक्ष Deshapratyaksha, Incomplete direct knowledge. केवल Kevala arises from total destruction of knowledge-obscuring karmas. This done is सकल प्रत्यक्ष Sakala Pratyaksha or complete direct knowledge.



SUTRA 13.

मतिस्मृतिःसंज्ञाचिन्ताऽभिनिबोधस्त्यनर्थान्तरम् ॥१३॥

Matih Smriti Sanjna Chinta Bhinibodha Ityanarthantaram.

मति *Mati*, sensitive knowledge, (connotes) the same things as:
स्मृति *Smriti*, (remembrance of a thing known before, but out of sight now),

संज्ञा *Sanjna*, also called प्रतिभिज्ञान *Pratibhijnana*, recognition (remembrance of a thing known before when the thing itself or something similar or markedly dissimilar to it, is present to the senses now), चिन्ता, *Chinta* or तर्क *Tarka*, Induction (reasoning or argument based upon observation. If a thing is put in fire, its temperature would rise),

अभिनिबोध, *Sabhinibodh*, or *Anumana*. (Deduction. Reasoning by inference, e g., any thing put in fire becomes heated, this thing is in fire, therefore it must be heated).

Each of the last four is based upon the one preceding it, e.g. remembrance is based on sensitive knowledge. We remember John, because we have seen him before. We recognise his picture because we remember him and his picture is before us. This संज्ञा, *Sanjna*, or recognition is based upon our remembrance, स्मृति *Smriti* of John which is itself based upon our मति, *Mati*, sense knowledge of John when we saw him, as also upon our sense-knowledge of the picture before us.

Induction (*Chinta*) is based upon recognition, We see the sun-rise in the same way every day. We see men dying. The same or similar phenomena take place. We remember and recognise these phenomons. By induction we say the sun rises always, and all men die. Having stered up our observations in the above induction we can make use of them in deduction or *Anumana* and argue :

The sun rises every day, therefore it will rise to-morrow. All men die, therefore John will die,

These five are called मति *Mati*, and they arise on the *Kshayopashama*, destruction-subsidence or the subsidence, destruction and operation of the Sensitive-knowledge obscuring *karmas*.



SUTRA 14.

तदिन्द्रियानिन्द्रियनिमित्तं ॥१४॥

Tadindriya nindriya nimittam.

It is acquired by the help of the इन्द्रिय *Indriya*, senses and अनिन्द्रिय *anindriya*, i. e., mind.

इन्द्रिय *Indriya*, is so called because *Indriya* means the soul and the sense-organs are an index or sign of that soul.

अनिन्द्रिय *Anindriya*, or अन्तःकरण *Antah karana*, mind is so-called to distinguish its internal character from the external senses. It is also called नोइन्द्रिय *No-Indriya*, or quasi-sense.

In Jainism it is an organ which is made of subtle matter called मनोवर्गणा *Manovargana*, or mental matter. Its form is like a lotus with eight petals near the heart.

SUTRA 15.

अवग्रहेहावायधारणाः

Avagrahe havaya dharnah.

They are :

अवग्रह *Avagraha*. It is preceded by दर्शन, *Darshana*, or cognition, tendency towards an object. Cognition is the consciousness which arises at the moment when the senses are merely awakened towards the object but before they gain even the slightest describable perception of its sensible qualities. *Avagraha* or perception is the definite or indefinite but distinct apprehension of the object, e. g. seeing a white object in the distance, we know that it is white but do not know whether it is a man or a pillar, etc. It is also called, ग्रहण *Grahaṇa*, आलोचन *Alochana* or अवधारण *Avadharana*.

उहा *Iha*, Conception. Here we deal with the contents of perception and picking out separate qualities from the continuous whole which we perceive, group them together. It is the under-mined but definite knowledge that the thing must be this or that. It is accompanied with a desire to ascertain what it really is. e. g. to argue that the white object must be a pillar. This knowledge is the nearest to the next kind, i. e., ज्ञेय *Jñeya*, judgment. It is also called उहा *Uha*, तर्क *Tarka*, परिक्षा *Pariksha*, विचारण *Vicharana*, or विज्ञान *Jijnasa*.

अवयव Avaya, Judgement. It is ascertained knowledge, e.g., that the white object is a pillar and not a man. It is also called, अपगम *Apaya* अपगम *Apagama*, अपनोद *Apanoda*, अपव्याध *Apavyadha*, अपेत *Apeta*, अपगत *Apagata* अपविद्ध *Apavidhha*, or अपनुत्त *Apanutta*.

धारण Dharana. Retention. Keeping things in the mind. Memory of Judgements. Firm and indelible grasp of the knowledge of the *Avaya* or ascertained kind. It is also called प्रतिपत्ति *Pratipatti*, अवधारण *Avadharana*, अवस्थान *Avasthana*, निश्चय *Nischaya*, अवगम *Avagama*, or अवबोध *Avabodha*.

SUTRA 16.

बहु बहुविध क्षिप्राऽनिःसृताऽनुक्तध्रुवाणां सेताराणाम् ॥ १६ ॥

Bahu bahuvidha kshipra nisrita nukta dhruvanam setaranam.

Of many, many kinds, quick, hidden, unexpressed, lasting and their opposites.

Each pme psete fpir londs om Sutra 15, has twelve subdivision i e, each one can relate to twelve kinds of considerations. These 12 are .—

बहु *Bahu*, More. Many in number or much in quantity as, perception of a crowd of people or a huge stack of hay.

एक *Eka*, अल्प *Alpa*, one in number or unit or quantity as, perception of one man or of a glass of water.

बहुविध *Bahuvidha*, of many kinds as perception of a man with a dog i e, of two kinds of object perceived.

एकविध *Ekavidha*, of one kind, as perception of a flock of sheep.

क्षिप्र *Kshipra*, quick e. g., perception of an Express going full speed.

अक्षिप्र *Akshipra* Slow, as perception of a snail crawling by.

अनिःसृत *Anisrita*, Hidden, {perception of a ship from seeing only its funnel above the horizon.

निःसृत *Nisrita*, Exposed, perception of an open thing, like a book on a table.

अनुक्त *Anukta*, Unexpressed, not described, perception of thing which has not been described to us, as that of an animal not known.

उक्त *Ukta*, Described, perception of what has been described, e. g., perception of a horse or cow, described in a book.

॥ *Dhruva*, Lasting; perception of a mountain.

अध्रुव *Adhruva*, Transient; perception of a flash of lightning.

As perception or *Avagraha* is illustrated above so *Iha*, *Avaya*, and *Dharama* have to be treated. Thus we obtain $12 \times 4 = 48$ divisions of senses-knowledge through any one of the senses. As there are five senses and one mind, the total kinds of sense-knowledge are :—

$$48 \times (5+1) = 48 \times 6 = 288.$$

SUTRA 17.

अर्थस्य ॥१७॥

Arthasya

The 288 refer to, i.e. are of determinable sense objects, (i. e., thing that can be touched, tasted, smelt, seen, heard or perceived by the mind).

The 288 sub-divisions of knowledge relates to determinable sense objects.

SUTRA 18.

व्यञ्जनस्यावग्रहः ॥ १८ ॥

Vyanjanasya Vagraha

There is only perception, *Avagraha* of *Vyanjana*, i. e., indeterminate object, (i. e. of a thing of which we know very little, so little that we can not proceed to the *Iha*, Conception, *Avaya*, Judgement, and *Dharana*, Retention of it).

It can be only the subject-matter of four senses, namely, touch, taste, smell and hearing. It can not be the subject-matter of sight and mind, which can acquire further knowledge of anything before them, e. g. we hear a sound but it is so slight and sudden that although we are sure that there was a sound, we can not determine its character or origin.

Thus there is no *Iha*, conception, *Avaya*, Judgement or *Dharma*, Retention of *Vyanjana*, an indeterminate object. But if the object becomes knowable as, e. g., the sound in the last illustration, by repetition, then the perception of it may become, *अर्थवग्रह* *Arthavagraha*, i. e., perception of a *पदार्थ* *Padārtha* or determinable sense-object, as distinguished from *व्यञ्जनवग्रह* *Vyanjanavagraha* perception of *व्यञ्जन* *Vyanjana*, or an indeterminate sense-object.

SUTRA 19.

न चक्षुर निद्रियाम्नाम् ॥ १९ ॥

Na Chakshu ranidriya bhyam.

This is not possible to the eye or the mind. (It is possible to the remaining four senses.)

Thus the kinds of perception of indeterminable objects are 48 i. e. the 4 senses can each know as indeterminable thing in its 12 aspects of *Bahu*, etc.

Thus the total number of kinds of sensitive knowledge is $288+48=336$.

SUTRA 20

श्रुतमति पूर्ववनेके द्वादश भेदस् ॥ २० ॥

Shrutam matipurvam dvyaneka dvadasa bhedam.

Shruta or Scriptural knowledge is always preceded by sensitive knowledge. It is of two kinds, one of which has twelve and the other many divisions.

A man hears the word Ship this is sensitive-knowledge.

The sound raises the qualities of a Ship in his mind, as he may have read or heard of them, this is Scriptural knowledge.

It is of two kinds. अण प्रविष्ट *Anga-pravishta* contained in the *Angas*. There are 12 *Angas*.

Angas-Vahya, out of the *Angas*. These non-*Anga* Scriptures are of many kinds.

Shruta literally means that which is heard (Sri to hear). Scriptural knowledge is of two kinds.

(1) Verbal, lettered (अक्षरात्मक *Aksharatmaka*).

(2) Non-verbal, letterless (अक्षरात्मक *Anaksharatmaka*).

Verbal scriptural knowledge is derived from words which are composed of letters (अक्षर *Akshara*), spoken or written; as when the eye sees the written word or the ear hears the Spoken word "soul". The seeing and hearing gives us merely sensitive knowledge (*Matijñana*). What more we think about the meaning and connotation of the word "soul" is scriptural knowledge. It is called verbal, because it is derived from our sensitive knowledge of the word "soul",

Non-verbal scriptural knowledge is derived from all kinds of sensitive knowledge except those kinds which can be reduced to words written or spoken. You feel cold air, the knowledge of coldness is sensitive knowledge by means of touch of the skin. If you do not like it and infer that it is unpleasant, it is non-verbal scriptural knowledge. It is derived from your knowledge or feeling of cold, which cannot be reduced to a mere word, written or spoken.

Verbal scriptural knowledge is possible only in rational beings. All the irrational have only non-verbal scriptural knowledge. Their sensitive knowledge also is confined to perception (*Avagraha*) by all the 5 senses except the eye.

The rationals have non-verbal scriptural knowledge also.

Verbal scriptural knowledge is also called *Shabdajnana* or *Shabdaja*, produced by words. Non-verbal scriptural knowledge is also called *Lingajanya* or *Lingaja* produced by signs. (*Gommatasara*, *Jiva Kanda*, *Gatha* 314)

THE ANICENT JAINA SACRED LITERATURE

The knowledge of a *Shruta* (श्रुत) may be of things which are contained in the *Angas* (Sacred books of the Jainas) or of things outside the *Angas*. There are 64 root letters of the alphabet or representations of sounds. Of these 33 are consonants, 27 vowel, (e. i. slight, long and prolonged, 3 kinds of each of the 6 vowels and mixed Sounds, *anusvara visarga kh khh hp hph*) which help in the formation of Compound letters). The total number of possible combinations of these 64 simple letters into Compound of 2,3,4, or more upto are the letters (Simple and Compound) of *Shruta* in its entirety. This letters in a middle foot (परमाणु) of the *Paramagama* gives us the number of *root Padas* 9 of the *Angas*, as 11, 28, 35, 80, 500. The remainder 8. 10. 80, 175 gives us the letters of that part of *Shruta* which is not contained in the *angas*. This part is divided into 14 *Prakirnaka*, such as *Dasa*, *Vaikalika Uttaradhayan* & c.

SUTRA 21

भावप्रत्ययोज्यधिदेवनारकानाम् ॥२१॥

Bhava pratyayoavadhir deva narakanam-

Birth-born visual knowledge (is in-born) in celestial and hellish beings.

The *Dravyas* are 6 ; जीव, पुद्गल, धर्म, अकर्म, आकाश और काल

Celestial and hellish beings have visual knowledge by birth and they have it till death, just as human beings have sensitive and scriptural knowledge. Celestial and hellish beings have sensitive and scriptural knowledge also.

SUTRA 22

अयोपशम निमित्तः षड्विकल्पःशेषाणाम् ॥२२॥

Kahayopashama nimittah Shad vikalpah Sheshnam.

(The other kind of Visual or direct material knowledge is) of six kinds (and it) arises from the part destruction, part subsidence and part operation (of the *Karmas* which obscure Visual or direct material knowledge). (This is acquired by the others, i.e., by human and sub-human beings, who are possessed of mind).

This is called गुणप्रत्यया *Guna-pratyaya* or acquired by merit as distinguished from in-born Visual knowledge.

Its 6 kinds are :—

आगुणमि *Anugami*. Accompanying Visual knowledge. That which goes with one to another place or even another incarnation.

अगुणमि *Ananugami*. Non-Accompanying Visual knowledge. That which does not go with one, but is lost.

वर्द्धमान *Varddhamana*. Increasing. That which goes on increasing.

हीनमान *Hiyamana*. Decreasing. That which goes on decreasing.

अवस्थित *Avasthita*, Steadfast. That which retains the extent which it had when it arose.

अनवस्थित *Anavasthita*. Changeable. That which increases sometimes and decreases on others.

These 6 kinds are due to the greater or less purity and intensity of right belief, etc.

Visual knowledge is also of 3 kinds :—

(1) देशावधि *Desha Avadhi*, Partial Visual knowledge. This alone is *Anavasthita*, changeable.

(2) परमावधि *Parama Avadhi*. High visual knowledge.

(3) सर्वोपवधि *Sarva Avadhi*. Full Visual knowledge.

These two extend upto Perfect knowledge. They are never *Ananugami* non-accompanying-nor-*Hiyamana*, decreasing.

Partial Visual knowledge is fallible, the remaining two are infallible. In these two there is no wrong belief or vowlessness (e.g. *Gommatasara, Jiva Kanda, Gatha 374*).

SUTRA 23

ऋजुविपुलमतिमनःपर्यायः ॥२३॥

Riju Vipulamati manah Paryayah.

Mental knowledge (is of two kinds) :—

ऋजुमति *Rijumati*. Simple direct knowledge of complex mental things e.g. of what a man is thinking of now along with what he has thought of it in the past and will think of it.

The thoughts which can be directly known by mental knowledge, must relate to matter. Simple mental knowledge is of 3 kinds according as the subject of it is the matter and form of thought about the simple activity of body, mind and speech which has been thought of in the mind of another (see J. K. 438). It knows the material objects of all the three times, past, present and future thought of by any soul in the present. Complex mental knowledge knows what has been thought of in the past and will be thought of in the future (J. K. 40). It is of 6 kinds as it knows matter and form of thought about simple and complex activity of body, mind and speech thought of by another (J. K. 439).

SUTRA 24

विशुद्ध प्रति पाताभ्याम् तद्विशेषः ॥२४॥

Vishuddha Prati patabhyam tadvisheshah.

Their differences (are as to) purity (and) infallibility.

SUTRA 25

विशुद्ध क्षेत्रस्वानि स्वानि विषयोऽध्यां वधि मनः पर्यायः ॥२५॥

Vishuddh Kshetra swami vishayobhyam vadhi manah paryayah.

Between Visual and Mental knowledge the differences relate to their purity, place, person of inherence and subject-matter.

SUTRA 26

मति श्रुत्यो निर्बन्धो द्रव्यस्य सर्व पर्यायस्य ॥२६॥

Mati shrutyo nirbandho dravyasya Sarva paryaysya.

The subject-matter of Sensitive and Scriptural knowledge, is all the six substances but not in all their modifications.

SUTRA 27

रूपिद्वा वधेः ॥२७॥

Rupishva vadheh

Matter (and embodied soul are the subject-matter) of Visual (knowledge, but not in all their modifications,)

SUTRA 28

तदनन्त भाजा मनः पर्ययस्य ॥२८॥

Tadananta bhaja manah paryayasya.

The infinitesimal part or the subtlest form of that (which can be known by the highest visual-knowledge, is the subject-matter) of mental-(knowledge).

Sarva avadhi or full visual knowledge knows one atom.

Riju mati, simple mental knowledge knows an infinitesimal part of an atom i. e., an infinitesimal degree of its attributes. This degree is called *Avibhaga practichcheda* or an infinitesimal part of its constituents. Complex mental knowledge (विपुल मति *Vipula mati*) knows an infinitesimal part of the subject-matter of simple mental knowledge. (See also Chapter V, Sutra 10)

SUTRA 29

सर्व द्रव्य पर्यायेषु केवलस्य ॥२९॥

Sarva dravya paryayesu kevalashya.

(The subject matter) of perfect knowledge (is) all the substances (and all their) modifications.

SUTRA 30

एक दीनि भाजानि युगपदेकस्मिन् चतुर्भ्यः ॥३०॥

Ekadīni bhājāni yugapade kaśminna Chatubhyah.

Beginning from the first onwards in one (should) at a time as to their distribution (there can be found) upto four (kinds of knowledge).

All mundane souls except the omniscient always have at least two, i. e., sensitive and scriptural knowledge.

SUTRA 31

मति श्रुतावधयो विपर्ययश्च ॥३१॥

Mati Shruta vadhayo viparyayascha.

And Sensitive (*Mati*) scriptural (*Shruta* and) Visual (*avadhi*) (knowledge are also) wrong (knowledge).

It is called "wrong" because unless there is right belief, knowledge cannot be called right. It is characterised by :—

Sanshaya, doubt (This is formed in sensitive and Scriptural, but never in Visual knowledge

Viparyaya, perversity mistake, opposite of truth, (this is found in Visual knowledge also) and *Anadhyavasya*, wrong knowledge caused by carelessness indifference or confusion.



SUTRA 32

सदसत्तोरनिर्वेषाद्विज्ञोपासवैस्तत्तवत् ॥ ३२ ॥

Sadmasato ravisasadya drichhopa labdha gunmattavat.

From lack of discrimination of the real, and the unreal, (the soul with wrong knowledge) like a lunatic, knows things according to his own whims.

Wrong knowledge may be :—

- (1) कारण विपर्यय, *Karana viparyaya*, mistaking the cause of a thing, as that the passions are primarily caused by matter, whereas they are the thought activity of the soul of which Karmas are an auxiliary cause.
- (2) भेदभेद विपर्यय, *Bheda bheda viparyaya*, perverse confusion of cause and effect ; mistaking the true relation of cause and effect, holding separation in identical and identity in really separate things, as holding that attributes and their substances are separate ; and
- (3) स्वरूप विपर्यय, *Swarupa viparyaya*, mistake in the nature or character of a thing. As idealists believing that form and colour are nothing, they exist only in knowledge.

विपर्यय, *Viparyaya* is also of 2 kinds :

- (1) सहज, *Sahaja*, mistake arising by one's own self, without any preaching of another.

All are Sahaja except the next.

- (2) गृह्यार्थ, *Aharya*, mistake due to another's preaching ; this is wrong scriptural knowledge caused by suggestive knowledge through the ears.

So much for Pramana.

SUTRA 33

नैगमसंग्रहव्यवहारजुसूत्रशब्दसमिच्छैवैव तत्र न्याः ॥ ३३ ॥

Nalgama Sangraha Vyavahararaju Sutra sabda Samabhirudhaj Vambhuta nyah.

The points of view (are) : Figurative, general, distributive, actual descriptive, specific, active.

Note 1. *Dravyarthika* or *Samanya*, substantial, *Utsarga*, *Anuyvritti*, relating to the substance. Its sub-kinds are :-

1. *Naigama*, Figurative, Not literal. Taking something for granted. Speaking of a past or future event as a present one. Speaking of a thing in hand, as a completed fact. It is of 3 kinds relating to past, present and future. e. g., saying on Divali day, "Lord Mahavira attained liberation to-day". The present is used figuratively of the past. Similarly for future or present. A man is going to book his passage, to Australia, and being asked where he is going, he says "To Australia" or when the cook is lighting fire and some one asks her what she is doing, she may answer, "I am cooking", although she is only preparing to cook.
2. *Sangraha*, General or Common. A class as a whole. A class of things, denoted by the same word. As *Dravya* applied to six *dravyas*, man, tiger etc.
3. *Vyavahara*, Distributive, To divide or separate a general term into its classes, orders, kinds and species. *Dravya* [is distributed into six *dravyas*, souls into mundane and liberated.

Note II. *Paryavartnika* or *Visesa*, *Apavada Vyavritti*. Model, relating to the modification of substances. This is :

4. *Riju Sutra*, i. e., the actual condition at (1) A particular instant and (2) for a long time. They are called *sukshma* fine and *sthula* gross respectively, e.g., a soul with a good thought for an instant, or a man with human condition for a life time
5. *Sabda*, Descriptive This includes grammatical correctness and propriety of expression. From this point of view we can use the present for the past tense, plural for the singular number, feminine for the masculine gender, etc. At the use of the present tense in describing the events which happened in the past, e.g. In 1066 A. D. We see the Normans attack the Anglo Saxons or conquer their country, or the common use of "you" for one man, or a boat which is generally called "she" to be named, Lord Nelson or

king Edward etc. Or asking your boy: have you been to school? "you" in grammar refers to more than one.

6. *Samabhirudha*, specific; Giving a word, one fixed meaning out of several which it has had. As "nut" by common consent of leaders of fashion and society has come to mean an extra smart man. 'Dreadnought' which means the condition of fearing nothing, has come to mean a worship of a particular type.
7. *Evambhuta*, Active. Restricting a name to the very activity which is conducted by the name. e.g. calling *Strat-ford-on-Avon* by that name, only so long as the town stands on the banks of the river *Avon*, and not after that, calling 'tripod' as such, only when it has got three legs to support it.

Note III. *Naya* may be distinguished from *Nikshepa*. *Nikshepa* is an aspect of the thing itself. *Naya* is a point of view from which we make some statement about the thing. The distinction is exceedingly fine at times, e.g. between *Dravya nikshepa* and *Naigamanaya*. In *Dravya nikshepa* we attribute its past qualities to the object in the present, e.g., calling an exiled king, a king. We do the same in *Naima Naya*. But the distinction is this: In *Dravya Nikshepa*, we know that the man has been a king in the past, the fact of his having been a king is the aspect of the man's personality which is denoted by *Dravya Nikshepa*. *Naigama Naya* only refers to the mode of our speech, to the point of view from which we make the statement that he is king. If we consider the statement merely as such, its point of view is *Naya*, if we consider the fact which justifies the point of view it is *Nikshepa*.

Note IV. Of the 7 *Nayas*, the first four: *Naigama*, *Sangraha*, *Vyavahara*, *Riju Sutra* are *Arthanaya* object stand point. i. e., stand points relating to the object considered. The remaining three *Śabda*, *Samabhirudha* and *Evambhuta* are *Śabda naya* word stand-point, i.e. relate to the word by which object is expressed.

Note V. *Paryaya* or modification is :—

- (1) *Sahabhavi*, which co-exists with the substance always. It is called *Guna* or attribute also, and (2) *Krama bhavi*,

which succeeded another modification. It is *Paryaya* proper.

Note VI. Each of the seven stand-points has a greater extent, or denotation than the one which follows it. *Naigama* has thus the greatest and *Ebambhuta* the least extent. *Nai-gama* deals with real and unreal. *Sangraha* with real only. *Vyavahara* only with a part of the real. *Riju Sutra* with only the present condition of a part of the real. *Sabda* with only the expression of the real, *Samabhirudha* with only that particular expression, which applies to the thing in its present activity.

Note also that each of the seven *nayas* is dependent on the one preceding it.

The Principle stand points are 7. But in practice, the stand points can obviously be many more, according to the point of view from which the things considered or spoken of

The other systems of philosophy recognise the following topics:

- (1) *Bauddhas*. They recognise the 5 *Skandhas*, (*Khandhas*) or Aggregates or groups.
Vijnana, Consciousness
Vedana, Feeling.
Samjna, Perception recognising and naming.
Sanskara, (*Sankhara*), 50 other mental accompaniment specially will. that arise when consciousness is submitted
Rupa, Material or body.
- (2) *Naiyayikas* 16 *Padarthas* namely *Pramana*, *Prameya*, *Sansya*, Doubt, *Prayojana* *Dristanta*, *Sidhanta*, *Avayava*, *Tarka*, *Nirnaya* *Vada*, *Jalpa*, *Vitanda*, *Hetva-bhasa*, *Chhala*, *Jati* *Nigrahasthana*.
- (3) *Vaisesika*. 7 *Padarthas* namely *Dravya*, *Guna* *Karma* *Samanya* *Visesa* *Samavaya* *Abhava*.
- (4) *Samkhya* 25 *Tatvas* namely *Prakriti*, *Pradhana* *Ahamkara*, *Karamendriya*,
5. *Jhana-endriya*.
5 *Mana*.

Tanmatras (*Sabda*, *Sparsha*, *rupa*, *rasa* *gandha*)

- 5 *Bhutas* (Earth, water, fire, air space) *Purusa* *Nirvikara* self; pure and perfect soul.

दूसरा अध्याय

CHAPTER II

SUTRA 1.

अपशमिकक्षयिकौ भावौ मिश्रश्च जीवस्य
स्वतत्त्वमौदयिक पारिणामिकौ च ॥

**Aupashamikakshayikau bhavau mishrascha jivasya
evattatvamaudayika parinamikau cha:**

The soul's own thatness, i. e., thought-activity (is of five kinds).

(1) अपशमिक *Aupashamika*, Subsidential, (That which rises from the subsidence of a *Karma* of the deluding kind).

(2) क्षयिक *Kshayika*, destructive, Purified (That which rises from the destruction of *Karma's* e.g., the 4 घातिया *Ghatiya*, destructive *Karma's*).

(3) मिश्र *Mishra*, Mixed (i. e., क्षयोपशमिक *Kshayopashamika*, destructive subsidential, that which rises from the partial destruction subsidence and operation of destructive *Karmas*).

(4) मौदयिक *Audayika*, operative (that which rises from the operation i. e., fruition of *Karmas*).

(5) पारिणामिक *Parinamika*, Natural (The soul's own natural thought-activity., independent of *Karmas*).

The first four of these thought-nature have reference to their various causes.

The 5th is the own, pure nature of the soul, which is always there, but in an impure condition, because of its being in conjunction and co-existence with three other thought-natures viz: those due to the subsidence (*aupashamika*), destruction subsidence and operation (*Kshayopashamika*) or to the operation of *Karmas* (*Audayika*).

Here it is necessary to understand the distinction between 8 kinds of *Karmas*.

There are 2 main classes.

(1) घातिया *Ghatiya* or Destructive *Karmas*, which attach and effect the very nature of the soul.

(2) अघातिया *Aghatiya*, or non-destructive *Karmas*, which do not effect the very nature of the soul. They are feeling, body family and age *Karmas* i. e., the वेदनीय *Vedaniya*, नाम *nama*, गोत्र *Gotra*, and आयु *Ayu* *Karmas* respectively.

Vedaniya or "Feeling," the pleasure and pain-bearing *Karmas* are also *Aghatiya*. Pain and pleasure are illusory, more or less, because they are due to *Vedaniya* acting with *Mohaniya* Deluding *Karmas* and it is then only that the thought-nature of the soul is affected.

The *Ghatiya Karmas* are four:—

(1) ज्ञानावरणीय *Jnanavarṇiya*, Knowledge-obscuring. It simply obscures knowledge.

(2) दर्शनावरणीय *Darshana varṇiya*, conation-obscuring. It simply obscures conation (*Darshana*).

(3) मोहनीय *Mohaniya*, Deluding. It intoxicates the soul. It is a sort of General of the enemy, host of *Karmas*. It affects both right-belief and right-conduct. It is like a solution of both right-belief and right conduct. It is like a solution of chalk in water. The water is clouded and opaque. The solution may settle down and the opacity being lost, transparency may be restored to the water, or by processes the chalk may be entirely separated from the water and permanent transparency obtained. Therefore this *Karmas* can merely subside or partially subside or partially subside and partially be destroyed, or be entirely destroyed. This alone can subside in the proper sense of the world.

(4) अन्तराय *Antaraya*, Obstructive *Karmas*. The 5 thought-natures are, as they are found:—

I. In mundane soul, here there is उदय *Udaya*, operation of *Karmas* in all. Of course a mundane soul is one bound with *Karmas*.

The thought-nature of soul is of 4 kinds, according as it is the result of—

1. Subsidence merely.
2. Destruction merely.
3. Operation merely.
4. All three combined, of the *Karmas*.

and

5. Its own natural thought-activity, i. e., its soulness and its capacity or incapacity of being liberated.

II. In Liberated souls there is no *Udaya of Karmas*, because there are no *Karmas* to operate. The soul rests in its own pure nature, in its own thought activity.

The कश्चिकभाव *Kshyikabhava* is identical with this, when all the *Karmas* have been destroyed. If only a few are destroyed, e.g. only right-belief-deluding *Karmas*, the mundane soul has कश्चिकभाव *Kshyikabhava* proper, which, of course, is not identical with *Parinamikabhava*.

Thus Liberated souls have 2 thought-activities:—

1. That which arises from the destruction of all *Karmas*, and
2. Their own pure self-thought-activity. *Bhava* is the nature of the soul as affected by *Karmas*. In its own pure nature it has its own *bhava*, the *Parinamika*. But in mundane souls, the soul is found bound with matter. This matter is constantly changing. The change corresponds with a change in the soul also. The character of this change is the cause of the different *Bhavas* in the soul.

Note— That of five thought-natures] each one of the first 3 is found in innumerable-fold souls compared with the one preceding it. In the 4th and 5th are found infinitely more souls than the third. Thus Subsidential thought-nature is found in the least and *Parinamika* in the greatest number of souls.

Note—That the first 2 natures can arise only in a soul capable of attaining liberation, never in any other.

Note—That there is subsidence only of the deluding *Karma* (*Mohamya*), and never of any other. Destruction of all the eight. Destruction subsidence only of four destructive *Karmas*, Operation of all the eight.

SUTRA 2

द्विवाष्टादशं क-विंशति-त्रिभेदा यथाक्रमम् ॥ २ ॥

Dvinawastadasaikavinsatitribheda Yathakramam.

(They are) of two, nine, eighteen twenty-one and three kinds respectively.



SUTRA 3

सम्यक्त्वचारित्र्ये ॥ ३ ॥

Samyaktvacharitre.

(The two kinds are) belief (and) conduct.

Note --(1) (औपशमिक सम्यक्त्व Aupashamika Samyaktva), subsidential right-belief, i. e., right-belief due to the subsidence of Darshanamohaniya, right-belief-deluding Karmas, and the four अमन्त्रानुबन्धि कषाय Ananta-nubandhi-Kasayas, i. e., anger, pride, deceit, greed, which feed these Karmas i. e., the error-feeding-passions.

(2) औपशमिकचारित्र्य Aupsamika charitra, subsidential right conduct i. e., right conduct caused by the subsidence of चरित्र मोहनीय Charitra-mohaniya, right-conduct-deluding Karmas.

Subsidential belief arises as follows:—

(1) In hellish beings, it can arise a little less than 48 minutes (one antarmuhurta) after their birth by उपपाद upapada instantaneous rise. The external causes are :

Up to 3rd hell, memory of past incarnations.

Hearing the preachings by friendly celestials visiting them.

Suffering too much pain.

The rest of hells have only 2, i. e., the above leaving out Preaching.

(2) In-human beings, it can arise from 4 to 8 days after their birth. The external causes are.

Memory.

Preaching.

Sight of Tirthankara's image.

(3) In human beings, 8 years after birth. The causes are same as in sub-human beings.

(4) In celestial beings, one antarmuhurta after their birth. The external causes are :

Up to 12th heaven, Memory,

Preaching,

Sight of Tirthankara's glory.

Sight of Supernatural powers of celestial beings.

From 12th to 16th, heaven, the above 4 except the last. In the 9 graiveyakas, the first two only, Memory and Preaching.

SUTRA 4

ज्ञानदशनदानकायभोगोपभोगवीर्यसि न ॥४॥

Jñanadarsanadanalebha bhogopabhogaviryani cha.

(The nine kinds are:) Knowledge, conation, charity, gain, enjoyment, re-enjoyment, power and (belief and conduct).

1. क्षयिक ज्ञान (*Kshayikajñana*), Destructive, purified, or perfect knowledge due to the destruction of knowledge obscuring (*Jnanavar-niya*) *Karmas*.

2. क्षयिक दर्शन (*Kshayikadarshana*), Destructive, purified or perfect conation due to the destruction of the *Karmas* which obscure it, i. e. of दर्शना करणी कर्म *Darshana-varniya Karmas*.

3. क्षयिक दान (*Kshayikadana*). Destructive or purified charity. Bestowal of fearlessness etc. due to destruction or purification caused by destruction of charity-obstructive *Karmas*, e. g. the soul's capacity of removing from all living beings, all kinds of apprehension of any veil as proceeding from himself. It is caused by the destruction of all *Karmas*, दानान्तराय *Danantraya*, which obstruct the exercise of this capacity.

4. क्षयिक लाभ (*Kshayikalabha*), Destructive or purified gain. Infinite gain due to purification caused by the destruction of all *Labh-antaraya* or gain obstructive *Karmas*. e. g. a man with perfect knowledge (i. e. केवली omniscient *Kevali*) always assimilates the molecules of fine quasikarmic matter.

5. क्षयिक भोग (*Kshayika bhoga*). Destructive or purified enjoyment. Infinite attainment of consumable objects due to purification caused by the destruction of all भोगान्तराय *Bhogantaraya* or enjoyment-obstructive-*Karmas*. This becomes the cause of miraculous manifestations such as the shower of flowers, by celestial beings etc.

6. क्षयिक उपभोग (*Kshayikaupabhoga*). Destructive or purified re-enjoyment. Infinite attainment of nonconsumable objects due to purification caused by the destruction of all उपभोगान्तराय *Upabhogantaraya*, re-enjoyment obstructive *Karma*. This becomes the cause of the miraculous throne, canopy etc, etc.

7. क्षयिक वीर्य (*Kshayikavirya*). Destructive or purified power. Infinite power due to purification caused by the destruction of all वीर्यान्तराय *Viryantaraya* or power-obstructive *Karmas*.

8. क्षयिक सम्यक्त्व (*Kshayika Samyaktva*). Destructive, Purified or perfect-right-belief i. e. perfect belief due to the destruction of three sorts of right-belief-deluding *Karmas* (i. e. of *Karmas* causing

मिथ्यात्व *Mithyatva*, wrong belief, सम्मिश्रमिथ्यात्व मिश्रप्रकृति *Samyaktva Mithyatva* mixed right-wrong belief and सम्मिश्र प्रकृतिमिथ्यात्व *Samyaktva Prakriti-Mithyatva*, right-belief clouded by the slightest wrong belief) and the four अनन्तानुबन्धिकाश्च *Anantanubandhi Kashayas* i. e., the error-feeding passions of Anger, Pride, Deceit and Greed which feed the above.

9. क्षयिक चरित्र (*Kshayikacharitra*). Destructive, purified or perfect, right conduct, due to purification caused by the total destruction of right conduct-deluding Karmas, Charitra Mohaniya.

SUTRA 5.

ज्ञानाज्ञानदर्शनलब्धयश्चतुस्त्रिपंचमेदाःसम्यक्त्वचारित्रसयमासंयमाश्च ॥५॥

Jñānasnādasarṇanālabdhayaschatustritripaṇcābhedaḥ Samyaktvacharitrasanyamasamamamaśca.

(The 18 kinds are)—4 kinds of (right) Knowledge, 3 wrong Knowledge 3 conations, 5 attainments, right-belief, conduct, and control-non-control.

Note-K-Kshaypashamika i.e., Destructive-substantial, Kshayopasham, is destruction-subsidence of सर्वघाति स्पृहकं *Sarvaghati spardhaka* i. e., of Karmic-matter which totally obscures; and the operation of देशघातिस्पृहकं *Deshaghati spardhaka*, i. e. Karmic-matter the operation of which obscures only partially.

- (4) क्षयोपशमिकज्ञान (*Kshayopashamika Jnana*). i. e., K-right- knowledge (it is of) 4 (kinds)—1. Mati, Sensitive, 2. Sruta Scriptural, 3. Avadhi, Visual and 4. Manahparyaya, mental).
- (3) क्षयोपशमिकज्ञान (K) Ajnana, (i. e., K. wrong knowledge. It is of 3 kinds. 1. कुमति *Kumati*, wrong-sensitive knowledge. 2. कुस्मृति *Kusruta*, wrong-scriptural knowledge, and 3. कुअवधि *Kuavadhi*, wrong visual knowledge. The last is also called विभंगज्ञान *Vi-bhanga Jnana*, wrong visual knowledge.
- (3) क्षयोपशमिकदर्शन (K) *Darshana*, (i. e., K. Conation). It is of three kinds: 1. चक्षु *Chakshu*, Ocular, by mean of the eye.
2. अचक्षु *Achakshu*, non-ocular, by means of the other senses and mind.
3. अवधि *Avadhi*, visual, They precede their respective knowledge.
- (5) क्षयोपशमिकलब्धि (K) *Labdhi*, i. e., K. attainment, acquisition. It is of 5 kinds:—
1. दान *Dana*, charity of 4 kinds—food, medicine, knowledge and fearlessness.
2. लाभ *Labha*, gain.

3. भोग Bhoga, enjoyment of consumable things.
4. उपभोग Upabhoga, re-enjoyment or enjoyment of non-consumable things.
- (5) वीर्य Virya, power.

All these are imperfect, because they are due only to partial destruction subsidence and operation of their respective अन्तराय Antaraya, obstructive karmas.

(1) स्योपशमिकसम्बन्ध (K) *Samyaktva* i. e., K. right-belief. This is imperfect because it is due to the destruction or subsidence of मिथ्यात्व *Mithyatva*, and सत्यत्वमिथ्यात्व *Samyaktvamithyatva*, i. e., wrong, and mixed right-wrong-belief deluding *Karmas*, and of the four error-feeding passions, anger, pride, deceit, and greed called अनन्तानुबन्धीकण *Anantanubandhi Kashaya* and which feed the above *Karmas* and by the operation of सत्यक प्रकृतिमिथ्यात्व *Samyaktva-prakritimithyatva*, i. e., right-belief slightly clouded by wrong belief.

(1) स्योपशमिकचारित्र्य (K) *Charitra* i. e., K. right conduct. Imperfect because it is due to the partial destruction, subsidence and operation of right-conduct deluding *Karmas* and

(1) स्योपशमिक संयमासंयम (K) *Samyama-Samyama* (i. e.) K. control-non-control. Taking only partial vows, It is due to the destruction or subsidence of अनन्तानुबन्धी *Anantanubandhi*, error-feeding and अप्रत्याख्यान *Apratyakhya*, partial vow preventing कण 18 *Kashayas* or the passions of anger, pride deceit and greed, and by the operation of the remaining kinds of passions.

SUTRA 6

गतिकषायीलंगमिध्यादर्शनाज्ञानाऽसंयताऽसिद्धलेश्याश्चतुश्चतुस्त्र्येकैकैकै
कषड्भेदाः ॥६॥

Gatikashayalingamithyadarshanainanasamyatasiddhaleshya
schatuschatrustyakaikaikaikasadbh edah

(The 21 are) :—

- 4 kinds of condition,
- 4 passions,
- 3 sexes,
- 1 wrong-belief,
- 1 ignorance,
- 1 vowlessness,
- 1 non-liberation

6 points.

The 21 kinds of thought-activity due to the operation of *Kar-mas*, relate to:—

1. गति *Gati*. Condition of existence, of 4 kinds:—
 - (1) नरक *Naraka*, hellish.
 - (2) तिर्यन्त्र *Tiryancha*, sub human.
 - (3) मनुष्य *Manushya*, human, and
 - (4) देव *Deva*, celestial.
2. क्लेश *Kashayas*. Passions of 4 kinds:
 - (1) क्रोध *Krodha*, anger ;
 - (2) मम *Mama*, pride ;
 - (3) माया *Maya*, deceit, and
 - (4) लोभ *Lobha*, greed.
3. लिंग *Linga*. Sexes of 3 kinds :
 - (1) स्त्रीवेद *Stri-veda*, Feminine inclinations :
 - (2) पुरुषवेद *Purushaveda*, Masculine inclinations :
 - (3) नपुंसकवेद *Napunsaka veda*, Common or neuter inclination:
 - (4) मिथ्यादर्शन *Mithya-darshana*. wrong belief.
 - (5) अज्ञान *Ajmana*. Ignorance.
 - (6) अश्रयत *Asanyata*. Vowlessness or non-controls.
 - (6) असिद्ध *Asiddha*. Unliberatedness.
 - (8) लेश्या *Leshya*. Through points of 6 kinds:—
 - (1) कृष्ण *Krishna*, black;
 - (2) नील *Nila*, blue;
 - (3) कापोत *Kapota*, grey;
 - (4) पीत *Pita*, yellow;
 - (5) पद्म *Padma*, pink, and
 - (6) शुक्ल *Sukla*, white.

SUTRA 7.

जीवमव्याप्तिमव्यवृत्तिश्च ॥७॥

Jivabbavyabhavytvani cha

(The 3 kinds of the soul's natural thought-activity are:)

1. जीवत्व *Jivatva*. Consciousness, livingness, or soulness in a soul.
 - (2) अव्यवृत्त *Bhavyatva*. Capacity of being liberated.
 3. अव्यवृत्त *Abhavyatva*. Incapacity of becoming liberated.
- Pure *Jivatva* जीवत्व is limited to the, सिद्ध *Siddhas*. Mundane

souls must have *Jivatva* but alleged with *Bhavyatva* on *Abhavyatva*. These 3 are peculiar to *Jiva*. च "cha", refers to those attributes which *Jiva* has in common with non-*Jivas*, as—

स्थितिः *Asitya*. Isness.

द्रव्यः *Dravyatva*. Being a substance, changeability.

प्रदेशः *Pradeshatva*. Capacity to occupy space, etc., etc. (see Chapter V, Sutra 2)

SUTRA 8

उपयोगो लक्षणाश्च ॥ ८ ॥

Upayoga lakshanam.

The Lakshna or differentia of soul (is) Upayoga, attention, consciousness, attentiveness.

लक्ष्य *Lakshya* is that of which the differentia is.

लक्षण *Lakshna* is: *आत्मकम्* *Atambhuta*, inseparable, and *अनात्मकम्* *Anat-mabhuta*, separable. As *Jivatva* is an inseparable but a celestial condition of existence is a separable quality of the soul.

SUTRA 9

स द्विविधो ज्ञानस्तुर्भेदः ॥ ९ ॥

Sa dvidhostachaturbhedah,

(Attention is of) 2 kinds which is subdivided into 8 and 4 kinds respectively :

ज्ञानोपयोग *Jnanapyoga*-knowledge-attention. It is of 8 kinds, relating to 5 kinds of right and 3 kinds of wrong knowledge.

दर्शनोपयोग *Darshanopayoga*, cognition-attention. It is of 4 kinds relating to 4 kinds of cognition, viz, *Chakshu*, *Achakshu*, *Avadhi* and *Kavala*, i. e., ocular, non-ocular, visual and perfect, cognition respectively).

उपयोग *Upayoga*, is a modification of consciousness, which is an essential attribute of the soul. Thus attentiveness is a kind of consciousness. Consciousness is a characteristic of the knower, the soul, consciousness is not mere passive or potential knowledge, nor is it merely a capacity to know, It is active. It is related to the self. It means that the soul is aware that it cognates or knows something about itself or the non-self. Attentiveness is only the direction or tendency of consciousness to apprehend or comprehend a

thing. If it is directed merely to an awareness that something is present to it but cannot be described. It is *Darshanopayoga*, if it is directed to know this something definitely, it is *Jñānopayoga*.

Attentiveness is essential to conation and knowledge. There can be no conation or knowledge without attention. There can be conation without knowledge. There can be no knowledge without ultimate conation of some kind or other. There can be no attention without consciousness.

Thus the stages of knowledge may be received to be consciousness, Conation-Attention, Conation, Knowledge-Attention and knowledge.

SUTRA 10

संसारिणो मुक्ताश्च ॥ १० ॥

Samsarino muktaśca.

(They are of 2 kinds:)

संसारि *Samsari*, mundane and मुक्त *Mukta*, Liberated souls. Mundance [souls wander in 5 kinds of परिवर्तन *Parivartana*, cycle of wandering:—

(1) द्रव्यपरिवर्तन *Dravya-parivartana*, matter cycle.

It is of two kinds, quasi-karmic and karmic नोकर्मे *No-karma*, quasi-karmic is the time which the soul takes in renewing exactly the same set of a particular number and quality of molecules, as it took once. Quasi-karmic.

कर्मे *Karma* or karmic, is the time taken in renewing exactly the same set of a particular number and quality of 8 karmas, as the soul took in once. The time taken in both of these is called one matter cycle or द्रव्य *Dravya* or पुद्गल, *Pudgala*, परिवर्तन *Parivartna*. For example a soul takes on a body to day, with its quasi-karmic and karmic matter. It goes on changing both. When in the couse of its changes, it again chances to take on a similar body with similar quasi-karmic and karmic-matter, it is said to have completed one matter cycle (*Dravya-parivartana*).

(2) क्षेत्र परिवर्तन *Kshetra-Parivartna*. Space Cycle. The time taken by one soul in going once round every single point of space in the Universe consecutively beginning from the foot of Mount Meru.

(3) कालपरिवर्तन *Kalo parivartna*. Time Cycle, e. g., a soul is born in the first समय *Sa-naya*, or instant of an अवसर्पिणी *Avarpini*, then in the 2nd *Samaya* of another (next or any other) *Avasarpini*, then in

the 3rd samaya of a third, and so on, till in the last samaya it is born in the last samaya of a new Avasarpini. Similarly it must be born in उत्सर्पिणी Utsarpini, eras. Then it must die in each samaya of the two eras like the above. The time taken to go through all this is a Time Cycle (*Kalaparivartna*).

(4) भवपरिवर्तन *Bhavapriivartna*. Incarnation Cycle, e.g., a soul is born in hell with the minimum age of 10,000 years. He is reborn again (after other births) in hell with 10,000-years age. This goes on as many times as there are samayas in 10,000 years. Then he is reborn there with an age of 40,000 years, and one samaya, then with an age of 10,000 years, and 2 samayas, and thus at every birth he adds one samaya till he is born with the maximum age of 33 सागर *Sagaras*. The time taken is called Hellish Cycle. Similarly with the Celestial Cycle, but there the minimum is 10,000 years and the maximum is only 31 Sagaras upto the 9th ग्रेवेयक *Graiveyaka*.

In the Sub-human and human-Cycles the minimum is one अंतर्मुहूर्त *antarmahurta*, and the maximum is 3 पल्य *palyas*. The procedure is the same as in Hellish and Celestial Cycles.

The time taken in all these four cycles, is called one Incarnation Cycle.

(5) भावपरिवर्तन *Bhava-parivartana*. Thought Cycle In-numerable units of soul's योगस्थान, *Yoga-Sthana*, Vibratory activity, make one अनुभगा बन्ध अभ्यवसाय स्थान *Anubhaga-bandha Adhyavasaya Sthana*, or a degree of the passion which determines intensity or bondage. In-numerable \times in-numerable, *Anubhaga-bandhas* make one कषाय अभ्यवसाय स्थान, *Kashaya Adhyavasaya Sthana*, i.e., one degree of passion which determines the duration of bondage. In-numerable \times in numerable *Kashaya*, etc., make one जघन्यस्थितिबंध *Jaghanya-sthiti-bandha*, i. e., minimum duration of bondage in a rational wrong-believing person. This is अन्तः कोटा कोटी सागर *Antah crore \times crore sagars*. One स्थिति *Sthiti* needs that the soul should pass through every one of the in-numerable योगस्थान, *Yog-sthanas*, to earn one अनुभगाबन्ध *Anubhaga-bandha* and then so on, to earn one *Sthiti*. Thus it should go up to the maximum duration of each one of the 8 Karmas, of course adding only one samaya at each step onwards from the minimum duration. When it has thus gone through the 8 *karmas* and their 148 divisions, it is said to have done one, Thought-Cycle (*Bhava-parivartana*).

In-numeral and Infinite numbers can be easily realised by a consideration of recurring decimals in dividing $10/3$ 3.333 ad inf., we get an infinite quotient; or of the famous relation of the circumference of

a circle to its diameter, $\pi = 22/7$ or of the square root $2(\sqrt{2})$, which may be properly said to represent an in-numberable quotient. In the science of Arithmetic these are called "ir-rational" numbers.

SUTRA 11

समनस्कामनस्काः ॥११॥

Samanaskamanaskah.

(The mudane souls are of 2 kinds:)

समनस्क *Samanaska*. Rational, those who have a mind, i. e., the faculty of distingushing right and wrong.

अमनस्क *Amanasku*. Ir-rational, those who have no mind.

मन *Mana*, mind in द्रव्यमन *dravya-mana*, objective mind. It is in the region of the हृदय *heart* like an 8 petalled flower made of मनोवर्णण *Manovargana*, or very fine mind molecules.

भावमन *Bhava-mana*, subjective mind is the soul's capacity to make use of the objective mind.

Subjective mind means the destruction subsidence of the *Karma* which obscures the quasi-sense or mind, (*no-Indriyaavarana Karma*), (See *Jiva Kanda of Gommatsara Gatha* 659).

The signs of rationality are :- capacity of receiving instruction (*Siksha*), understanding, actions (*Kriya*), preaching (*Upadesha*), and recitation (*alapa*). (J. K. 660)

A rational soul-investigates before acting what ought or ought not to be done; distinguished between things as they are and as they are not in reality. He also comes to you on being called by his name. (J. K. 661)

SUTRA 12

संसारिणस्त्रसत्त्वावराः ॥१२॥

Sansarinastrasathavarah.

The mundane souls (are of 2 kinds from another point of view,)

प्रस *Trasa*, Mobile. Many-sensed, i.e., having a body with more than one sence.

स्थव *Sthavara*, Immobile, one-sensed, i. e., having only the sense of touch. Mobile souls are those which being in fear, have the capacity of moving away from the object of fear. Immobile souls do not have this capacity.

SUTRA 13

पृथिव्यप्तेजोवायुवनस्पतयः स्वावराः ॥१३॥

Prithivyaptejo vayu vanaapatayah sthavarah.

Immobile (one sensed souls) (are of 5 kinds,)

- (1) पृथ्वी *Prithvi*, earth-bodied,
- (2) अप *Ap*, water bodied,
- (3) तेज *teja*, fire bodied,
- (4) वायु *Vayu*, air-bodied, and
- (5) वनस्पति *Vanaspati*, Vegetable-bodied.

Each of these is considered in 3 aspects, e.g. the earth souls :-

Take earth-bodied :-

(2) पृथ्वी कायिक *Prithvi-kayika*, as embedded in matter, as earth bodied soul.

(3) पृथ्वीकाय *Prithvi-kaya*, as material body, as, the body without soul. It is dead earth after the soul has left it.

(4) पृथ्वीजीव *Prithvi-jiva*, as an earth-soul, as the soul which is to be embodied in the earth, but is now in विग्रहगति *vigrahagati* or in transition from one existence to another. Similarly *apajiva*, *apakaya* and *apakayika*, etc.

The maximum size of the body of an earth, water, fire and air-soul is an innumerable part of a cubic finger. Therefore it is quite invisible. We see it only in a mass. Take a glass of fresh water. Every drop of it is a mass of many water-bodied souls. The many minute animalculae seem under the microscope are foreign or other souls. They are not water bodied souls. Water-bodied souls have water and that alone the matter of their bodies. Similarly the earth etc, souls.

As to the forms, the bodies of earth, water, fire and air souls, they are respectively oval like a pea of masoora (seed), round like a drop of water, long cylindrical with pointed tips like a collection of needless, and oblong like a flog. (J.K. 22).

SUTRA 14

द्विन्द्रियादयस्त्रयाः

Dvindriyadatastrayah.

(Mobile or many suited souls)

With 2 senses, etc., i.e,

With 3 senses

„ 4 „

„ 5 „ without mind, अमनस्क *Amanaska*, ir-rational and

„ „ „ with mind, समनस्क *Samanaska*, rational.

Note, on प्राण *Prana*, vitalities. Vitality is a from of consciousness as manifested through a body of a mundane soul.

There are 10 kinds of *Prana*, of vitality, i.e., the 5 senses 3, powers of mind, body and speech, age and respiration.

The one sensed souls have 4 vitalities, viz, touch, power of body, age and respiration.

The two sensed souls add to these 4, the senses of taste and power of speech.

The three sensed souls add to these 6, the sense of smell.

The four sensed souls add to these 7, the sense of sight.

The five-sensed rational souls add to these 8, the sense of hearing.

The five sensed irrational souls add to these 9, the power of mind.

SUTRA 15

पञ्चेन्द्रियाणि

Panchendriyani.

The senses are five,

SUTRA 16

द्विविधानि ॥१६॥

Dvividhani.

(They are of) 2 kinds:—

- (1) द्रव्येन्द्रिय *Dravyendriya*, objective-senses, sense-organs, and-
- (2) भावेन्द्रिय *Bhavendriya*, subjective-senses, sense-faculties,

SUTRA 17

निर्वृत्युपकरणो द्रव्येन्द्रियः ॥१७॥

Nirvrittyupakaranadravyendriyani.

Objective senses or sense-organs (have a two-fold formation);—

- (1) निष्पत्ति *Nirvriti*, (the organ itself, e. g., the pupil of the eye.)
- (2) उपकरण *Upakarana*, (its Protecting environment, e. g., the eye-lid, etc.).

Each formation is of 2 kinds : अन्तरंग *Antaranga*, internal, and *Vahiranga* बाह्य, external.

Internal organ means the soul itself which is co-extensive with and of the same form as the organ in which it incarnates.

External organ means the material organ which is permeated by the internal organ or the soul.

Internal environment, is the matter immediately surrounding the organ, e.g., the corner of the eye.

External environment is the matter which is not so immediately situated with reference to the organ, as the eye-lid.

SUTRA 18

लब्ध्युपयोगौ भावेन्द्रियम् ॥१८॥

Labdhyupayogobhavendriyam.

Bhavendriyas subjective sense, sense-faculties (are of 2 kinds:—

- (1) लब्धि *Labdhi*, (it is the attainment of manifestation of the sense faculty by the partial destruction, subsidence and operation of the knowledge-obscuring karma relating to that sense.)
- (2) उपयोग *Upayoga*, (the conscious attention of the soul directed to that sense.)

SUTRA 19

स्पर्शनरसनघ्राणचक्षुः श्रोत्राणि ॥१९॥

Sparsanarasanaghrana chakshusrotrani.

(The senses are:)

स्पर्शन	<i>Sparshana</i>	Organ of Touch, i. e. the skin, the whole body.
रसन	<i>Rasana,</i>	" Taste " tongue.
घ्राण	<i>Ghrana,</i>	" Smell " nose.
चक्षु	<i>Chakshu,</i>	" Sight " eyes.
श्रोत्र	<i>Shrotra,</i>	" Hearing " ears.



SUTRA 20

स्पर्शरसगन्धगर्णशब्दास्तद्वर्धाः ॥२०॥

Sparsarasagandhvarnasabdaastadarthah.

The functions (of the 5 senses are to determine the various kinds of) touch, taste, smell, colour, and sound (respectively).

स्पर्श *Sparsha*, Touch is of 8 kinds: उष्ण *Usna*, hot; शीत *Sita* Cold, रुक्ष *Ruksha*, rough; स्निग्ध *Snigdha*, Smooth; कोमल *Komala*, soft; कठोर *Kathora*, hard; लघु *Laghu*, light; and गुरु *Guru*, heavy.

रस *Rasa*, Taste, is of 5 kinds : तिक्त *Tikta*, pungent, अम्ल *Amla*, acid; कटु, *Katu*, bitter; मधुर *Madhur*, sweet; and कषाय *Kasaya*, astringent.

गन्ध *Gandha*, Smell is of 2 kinds: सुगन्ध *Sugandha*, sweet-smelling, fragrant, दुर्गन्ध *Durgandha*, bad-smelling, malodorous.

वर्ण *Varna*, Colour is of 5 kinds : कृष्ण *Krishna*, black; नील *Nilā*, blue; पीत *Pita*, yellow, and शुक्ल *Sukla*, white; पद्म *Padma*, pink.

शब्द *Sabda*, sound; स्वर *Svara* is of 7 kinds : शड्ज *Sadja*, ऋषभ *Risabha*, गन्धार *Gandhara*, मध्यम *Madhyama*, पञ्चम *Panchama*, धैवत *Dhavata* and निषाद *Nisadha*, i. e., the Do, re, me, fa, sol, la, si.

In all there are 27 main kinds, which can be combined in innumerable combinations.

Note:—That in rational beings, mind also assists the senses in bringing knowledge to the soul.

SUTRA 21

श्रुतमनिन्द्रियस्य ॥ २१ ॥

Shrutamanindriyasya.

(The function) of the mind (is the) cognition of Scriptural knowledge.

Note:— Scriptural knowledge of a short is possible among the souls without a mind also. (See Note under chapter 1, Sutra 30, above).

SUTRA 22

वनस्पत्यास्तानामेकम् ॥ २२ ॥

Vanaspatyan-tanamekam.

(The earth-bodied, water-bodied, fire-bodied, air-bodied,) up to

the vegetable-bodied, souls (have only) one (sense i. e., touch. They know only by means of touch).

SUTRA 23

कृमिपिपीलिकाभ्रमरमनुष्यादीनामेकैकवृद्धानि ॥ २३ ॥

Krimipipilikabhramaramanusyadinamckaikvriddhani.

Krimi, worms, etc., (have 2 senses : touch and taste).

Pipilika, ants, etc., [have 3 senses : touch taste and smell).

Bhramara, bumble-bee, etc, (have 4 senses : touch, taste, smell and sight).

Manushya, man etc., (have 5 senses . touch taste, smell, sight, and hearing).

Each (class has) one (sense), more than the one preceding it.

SUTRA 24

संज्ञिनः समनस्काः ॥ २४ ॥

Sanjninah samanaskah.

The rational (beings are also called)-

Sanjini, (i. e., one who has got sanjna-mind here).

Elsewhere it means, name, desire, knowledge, etc.

All the celestial, human and hellish beings are rational. Some 5 sensed sub-humans are also rational, such as cow, horse, ape, pigeon serpents, etc.

SUTRA 25

विग्रहगतौ कर्मयोगः ॥२५॥

Vigrahagataukarma-yogah.

In *Vigrahagati* transmigration, (i. e., the passage of the soul from one incarnation to another, there is only) *Karmic* body vibration (*Karma Yoga*), by which the electric and *Karmic* molecules are attracted by the soul.

SUTRA 26

अनुभ्रैरि गतिः ॥ २६ ॥

Anuṣṭraṇigatih.

(In *Viśraha-gati*, transmigration, or passage from one incarnation to another, the soul's) movement (is always) in a straight line.

अनुभ्रैरि *Sreni*, a straight line of spatial units from end to end) parallel with one of the 6 directions :

East-West, North-South, up and down, either way.

An indivisible atom of matter (परमाणु *Parmanu*), can go straight from the lowest limit of the Universe to its highest point i. e., a distance of 14 राजु *Rajus*, in one *samaya*.

SUTRA 27

अविग्रहा जीवस्य ॥ २७ ॥

Avigrahajivasya.

(The soul in its pure condition, i. e., the liberated) soul has (a straight upward) vertical movement, the movement is called अविग्रहा *avigraha*, because it is quite direct and upward, vertical and there is no turning in it.)

SUTRA 28

विग्रहवती च संसारिणः प्राक्चतुर्भयः ॥ २८ ॥

Vigrahavatichasansarinah prakchaturbhayah.

Viśrahavati or passage from one incarnation to another of a mundane soul (takes place) before 4 (*Samaya* as at the most).

A समय, *Samaya* is the time taken by an atom of matter in passing from one पदार्थ, i.e. point of space, to the next.

Why 4 *Samyas* ? The soul takes one *samaya* in going in one direction. Each turning means one *Samaya*. In the Universe there can not possibly be more than 3 turnings, necessary for the soul's passage. Therefore 3 *samayas* or less than 4 *samayas* are enough for the most crooked passage. In the fourth *samaya* the soul must incarnate in its new body.

SUTRA 29.

एकसमयाविग्रहा ॥ २९ ॥

Ekasamayavigraha.

Where the passage is straight and there is no turning, it takes only one *samaya*.

Even an atom of matter in going from one end of the Universe to the other in a straight, upward or vertical direction, takes only one *Samaya* if it goes fastest.

SUTRA 30.

एकं द्वौ त्रीन्वानाहारकः ॥ ३० ॥

Ekamdvautrinvanaharakah.

(In the) one, two or three (*Samayas* of its passage, the soul remains) अनाहारक, *Anaharaka*, non-assimilative, (that is, does not attract the molecules of *aharaka*, assimilative matter of which the external bodies, i.e., the physical, fluid and *aharaka* bodies, are formed.)

(Note that only *karmayoga* takes place, i. e., only *Karmic* electric matter is attracted. See चत्त्र, *Sutra 25 Supra*.)

Note also that in a straight passage of the soul, one *samaya* is taken in leaving one body and occupying the other. And in the passage, the soul continues to be *aharaka*, although in the passage itself, it is not necessary for it to attract *no-karmic* molecules, as it leaves, the molecules already attracted in its last body and will attract a fresh batch in the new body which it is going to put on in the same *samaya*.

SUTRA 31.

सम्मुखनर्भोपपादा जन्म ॥ ३१ ॥

Sammurchhanagarbhopapada jnma.

(Birth is of 3 kinds.)

सम्मुखन, *Sammurchana*, spontaneous generation. It is the result of surrounding matter combining and forming the physical body for the incarnating soul.

नर्भ *Garbha*, Uterine birth. It is the forming of the physical body by the union and development of father's seed and mother's blood in the womb of the female. In the language of Embryology, by

the union between a sperm and an ovum, resulting into a fusion of the two cells into one single cell, called the 'fertilised ovum.'

उपपाद *Upapada*, Instantaneous Rise. (Instantaneous grouping together of the वैक्रियक, *Vaikriyaka*, matter to form the *Vaikriyaka* or fluid body, which is peculiar to hellish and celestial beings.)

SUTRA 32.

सच्चित्तशीतसंयुताः सेतरा मिश्राश्चैकशस्तद्योनयः ॥ ३२ ॥

Sachittasitasamvritah setaramisraschaikasastadyonayah.

Living matter, cold, covered, with their opposities, and the combination of each (pair) (are) their nuclei or birth places. (योनि, *yoni*, nucleus, the material environment in which the incarnating soul finds lodgment, is of 9 kinds:—

सच्चित्त *Sachitta*, of living matter, as the stomach, in which worms may appear.

अचित्त, *Achitta*, of matter only with no life ; as a wall or table in which mosquitoes may be generated.

सच्चित्ताचित्त, *Sachittachitta*, of living and dead matter; as lice in a slut's blouse or hat. The person is living but the blouse or hat is dead-matter.

शीत, *Shita*, cold. Some microbes take birth on account of cold.

उष्ण *Ushna*, Hot. Some microbes take birth on account of heat.

शीतोष्ण, *Shitoshna*. Where life is generated by the co-existence of cold and heat.

As the heat of sun breeding gnats in a stagnant pool of water.

संयुत, *Samvrita*, Covered. As fruit may go bad and breed germs in it, if it is kept packed for a long time.

विवृत, *Vivrita*, Exposed. As moss in a piece of water.

भङ्गुत विवृत, *Samvrita-vivrita*. Part exposed and part covered.

The hellish and celestial beings take birth in अचित्तयोनि, *achitta-yonis*.

Souls taking birth from a womb, employ a सच्चित्ताचित्त योनि *Sachittachitta-yoni*.

सम्मुखन, *Sammurchanas*, employ *sachitta*, *achitta*, and *sachittachittayonis*.

Hellish (नारकी) and celestial beings (देव) have hot and cold (some one and some the other) nucleus.

Fire-bodied souls (तेजकावजीवाः) have a hot one. The others have hot or cold or mixed.

Hellish, celestial and immobile beings have a covered nucleus. The विकलव्य, *Vikalatraya*, i. e., from 2 to 4 sensed beings have an open-covered nucleus.

The different combinations of these *yonis* yield 8400000, योनि, *yonis* as follows:—

नित्यनिगोद, *Nitya nigoda*, souls which have never yet come out of a condition of common vegetables, where many souls occupy one body, as a potato :

Their <i>yonis</i> are	...	...	7,00,000
इतर निगोद, <i>Itaranigoda</i> , souls which have gone back to <i>nigoda</i>	...	...	7,00,000
पृथ्वी कायिक, earth-bodied ; जलकायिक, water-bodied ;			
तेज कायिक, fire-bodied , and वायु कायिक, air-bodied, all			
four each 7,00,000	—	—	28,00,000
वनस्पति कायिक, Vegetables, (Trees, etc.) except <i>nigoda</i> .			10,00,000

For स्थावर <i>sthavaras</i> soul	...	...	5200000
„ द्विद्रिय, 2 sensed	...	...	200000
„ त्रि, „ 3 „	...	...	200000
„ चतु, „ 4 „	...	...	200000
„ पच, „ 5 „ animals	...	...	400000
„ „ „ 5 „ human beings	...	...	1400000
„ देवाः celestial beings	...	...	400000
„ नासक, hellish	...	...	400000

Total ... 8400000

SUTRA 33.

- जरायुजाण्डजपोतानाः गर्भे ३३॥

Jarayujandajapotanam garbhah.

Uterine birth (is of 3 kinds)

जरायुज, *Jarayuja*, Umbilical (Birth in a yolk, sack, flesh envelope, like a human child)

अण्डज, *Andaja*, Incubatory. (Birth from a shell like an egg.)

पोत, *Pota*, Unumbilical. (Birth without any sack or shell, like a cub of a lion or a kitten.)

SUTRA 34

देवनारकाणामुपपादः ॥३४॥

Devanarakanamupapadah.

Upapada, i.e., birth by instantaneous rise (is) peculiar to hellish and celestial beings.

SUTRA 35

शेषाणां सम्मूर्धनम् ॥३५॥

Sesanamsammurchhanam

All the rest, (i.e., except those born by embryonic birth and instantaneous rise are) सम्मूर्धनं *Sammurchhana*, born by spontaneous generation,

SUTRA 36

औदारिकवैक्रियिकाहारकर्तृजसकर्मणानि शरीराणि ॥३६॥

Audarikavaikriyikaharaktaijasakarmani sarirani.

The bodies are of 5 kinds —

1. औदारिक, *Audarika*, the physical (body of all men and animals)
2. वैक्रियिक, *Vaikriyika*, Fluid. (The body of hellish and celestial beings, which they can change at will)

3. आहार, *Aharaka*, assimilative (the spiritual man like emanation from the head of a saint in doubt, etc.)

4. तज्ज, *Tajasa* Electric (body of mundane souls formed of fine molecules of electric matter called *Tajasa Vargana*)

5. कर्माण, *Karmana* Karmic (body of mundane souls, made of fine molecules of Karmic matter called *Karmana Varganas*, कर्मण्यर्माण)

The first 3 bodies are made of *Aharaka Vargana*, molecules of assimilative matter.

SUTRA 37

परं परं सूक्ष्मम् ॥३७॥

Param paramasukhamam.

(Of these 5 bodies) each successive one (is) finer, i.e., subtler (than the one preceding it.)

SUTRA 38

प्रवेशतोऽसंख्येयगुणं प्राक्तेजसात् ॥३८॥

Pradesatosamkhyeyagunam praktaijasat.

(From the 1st to the 3rd body, i.e.) up to the Electric body (each one has) innumerable times the number of atoms (which are in the one preceding it.)

SUTRA 39

अनन्तगुणे परे ॥३९॥

Anantagune pare.

Of the last two (i. e., the electric and the *Karmic* bodies, each one compared with the body immediately preceding it has an) infinite-fold (number of atoms)

SUTRA 40

अप्रतोघाते ॥४०॥

Apratighate.

(The electric and *Karmic* bodies are) unpreventible (in their passage, i.e., they can penetrate and permeate upto the end of the (Universe.)

The Fluid (वैक्रियक) and *Aharak* (आहारक) assimilative bodies can also penetrate but at some places they can not. Their penetrative does not extend beyond (त्रस नाडी) *Trasa nadi*, the mobile channel beyond where mobile souls are not found

SUTRA 41

अनादिसम्बन्धे च ॥ ४१ ॥

Anadi Sambandhe cha.

And their connection, (i.e., of the electric and the *karmic* bodies with the soul is) without beginning. That is, these two are always found in every soul and are absent only in liberated souls (सिद्धाः) But of course, being material, they are always discarding their old constituent particles and attracting and assimilating new particles in the place of the old. From this point of view, a particular electric or *karmic* body is said to have a beginning.

SUTRA 42

सर्वस्य ॥ ४२ ॥

Sarvasya.

(The electric and the karmic bodies are always found) with all (mundane souls).

SUTRA 43

तदादीनि भाज्यानि युगपदेकस्याचतुर्भ्यः ॥ ४३ ॥

Tadadīni bhajyāni yugapadekasyachaturbhyah.

Along with these, (two i. e., the electric and the karmic bodies) in their distribution at one and the same time, with one soul (there can be utmost upto 4, (i.e., these two and one or two more bodies), i. e., a soul can never have all the 5 bodies at once. Electric and Karmic bodies it must always have. But if it has more, it can add only one or two more as follows :-

In विग्रहगति, *Vigraha-gati*, or passage from one incarnation to another, the soul has only 2 bodies, the तेजस, electric and the कर्मण, Karmic.

In human and sub-human condition of existence, the soul has 3, i.e., the electric, the Karmic and the physical bodies.

But the saints sometimes have these 3 and the आहारक *Aharaka*, assimilative body also, i. e., 4 bodies at one and the same time. This is the highest limit.

The hellish and celestial being also have 3 bodies ; The electric, the Karmic and the fluid bodies.

SUTRA 44

निरुपभोगमन्त्यम् ॥ ४४ ॥

Nirupabhogamantyaṁ.

The last (body, i. e., the karmic is) निरुपभोग *nirupabhoga*, i. e., can not be the means of enjoyment to the soul through the senses and the mind, as the physical body can be e. g., the karmic body bears no sound sees, no sights, etc.

Note—The तेजस electric body is like the karmic body *nirupabhoga*. There is no योग *yoga* on vibration or cause of attraction of subtle matter in it.

SUTRA 45.

गर्भसम्पृच्छनजमाद्यम् ॥ ४५ ॥

Garbhasammurchhanajamadyam

The first, (i. e., the physical body is produced along with the electric and the *karmic* bodies, in beings who are) born in the embryonic wayon (गर्भे) or by spontaneous generati (सम्पूर्णन).

SUTRA 46

अपपादिकं वैक्रियिकम् ॥ ४६ ॥

Aupapadikam Vaikriyikam

The fluid body (is found along with the electric and the *karmic* bodies in those who are) born by अपपाद, instantaneous rise.

SUTRA 47

लब्धिप्रत्ययं च ॥ ४७ ॥

Labahipratyayan cha

And (fluid body can also be attained by other) cause. i. e., by a लब्धि, *labdhi*, attainment due to special austerities.

But this is, of course, in exceptional circumstances.

SUTRA 48

तेजसमपि ॥ ४८ ॥

Taijasamapi

Even the electric (body can be product of special austerities.)

This takes place in two ways:—

(1) शुभ तेजस, *Subha taijasa*. Beneficent electric body, e.g., a saint with supernatural powers sees famine or plague, etc., in a country and is moved to compassion. His austerities enable his electric body to overflow itself, and issuing out of his right shoulder go and to remove the causes of famine, plague, etc., and then come back and be re-absorbed in the same way in which it went out.

(2) अशुभ तेजस, *Asubha taijasa*. Maleficent electric body, e. g., the same saint being moved to anger, the duplicate body will go forth

from the left shoulder and having consumed the object of anger, will return to go into the saint and consume him also.

SUTRA 49

सुभं विशुद्धमव्याधाति चाहारकं प्रमत्तसंयततत्तस्येन ॥ ४९ ॥

Subham visuddhamavyoghati chaharakampramattasamyata
syaiva

And the *Aharaka* body (is) beneficent pure and impreventible and found only in a *pramatta samyata* saint, (i. e., one in the 6th stage of spiritual development with imperfect now.)

It is (1) सुभ, *Subha*, (always) beneficent.

(2) विशुद्ध, *Vishuddha*, pure, (the production of metitorious karmas,) and.

(3) अव्याधान, *Avyaghati*, unpreventible (by anything in its course,)

The *आहारक* शरीर, *Aharaka* body is the spiritual man like emanation that flames forth from the head of a saint when he wants to remove hisd oubt on some momentous and urgent point; the flaming from flashes across space, touches or sees the feet of some omniscient Lord (*kevalin*) or a saint with perfect scriptural knowledge (श्रुतकेवली *shruta kevalin*, like भद्रबाहु *Bhadrabahu*, the preceptor of चन्द्रगुप्त, *Chandragupta* Maurya) and thus having removed the doubt re-enters the saint's head.

All this is done, of course with lightning rapidity, but it never takes more than one *antarmuhurata*, i. e., 48 minutes, minus one instant.

SUTARA 50

नारकसम्मूर्च्छिनो नपुंसकानि ॥ ५० ॥

Narakasammurchhino napumsakani.

The hellish beings (and those who are) सम्मूर्च्छन, *sammurchana*) spontaneously generated (are of) a common or neuter sex.

SUTRA 51

न देवाः ॥ ५१ ॥

Na devah.

The celestial beings never (have a common sex. They are always masculine or feminine.)

SUTRA 52

शेषास्त्रिवेदाः ॥ ५२ ॥

Shasatrivedah.

The remaining (beings, i. e., those born of an embryo, have) 3 sexes, (i. e., they can be masculine, feminine or common).

लिंग, *linga* or sex is of 2 kinds :

द्रव्यलिंग, *Daravya linga*, objective sex, differentiating organs of the sexes,

भावलिंग *Bhava Linga*, subjective sex, thought activity relating to sexual inclinations.

SUTRA 53

औपपादिक चरमोत्तमदेहाऽसंख्येयवर्षायुषोऽनपवर्त्यायुषः ॥ ५३ ॥

Aupapadika charamottamadehasamkhyeyavarasayusoana pavartyayusah,

(Those who are) born by instantaneous rise, (i.e., hellish नरकाः, and celestial beings देवाः, (those who are in their) last (incarnation चरम देह *charama body*) with the highest (kind of) physical body, (and those whose) age is innumerable years, (e. g., human and sub-human beings in भोगभूमि, *bhoga bhumi* enjoyment land i. e., in a condition of life where there is all enjoyment and no labour like agriculture, etc. (these three live the full span of) their life. (It can) never (be) cut short (by themselves or others).

The remaining beings, i. e., human and sub-human beings in कर्म, भूमि, *Karm bhumi*, work-land, i. e., the condition of life where agriculture, etc. are necessary for sustenance, can have their lives cut short, by external causes, as accident, suicide, disease, etc., etc.



तीसरा अध्याय

CHAPTER III

SUTRA 1

रत्नशर्करावायुकाण्डकूटतमोमहातमः प्रभासूमयोवर्णासूयानाकाश प्रतिष्ठाः
सप्ताधो ऽ वः ॥ १ ॥

**RatnasarkaravalukaPankadhumatamomahatamah prabhah
umayoghanambuvatakasha pratisthah saptadhoodhah.**

[NOTE.—To understand this chapter it is necessary to consider maps I and II of Loka (लोक) and the 2½ Dvipas (महाद्वीप) with their explanations.]

There are 7 earths, lying parallel to each other and with an intervening space separating one from the other. Beginning from the earth which we inhabit, these earths are situated, each one lower than the other. (Each one is surrounded and) supported by (3 atmospheres) of.

घनवात *Ghana vata*, gross air atmosphere,

अम्बुवात *Ambuvata*, vapour atmosphere,

तनुवात, *Tanvata*, thin air atmosphere ;

(and is enveloped by) space. (These) 7 earths (are):

1. रत्नप्रभा *Ratna prabha*, in hue like jewels (16 varieties of which are found in it as diamond, ruby, etc., etc.)
2. शर्कराप्रभा *Sharkara prabha*, in hue like sugar.
3. वायुकाण्डप्रभा *valuka prabha*, in hue like sand.
4. पंकप्रभा *panka prabha*, in hue like mire.
5. धूमप्रभा *Dhuma prabha*, in hue like smoke.
6. तमःप्रभा *Tamah prabha*, in hue like darkness.
7. महातमःप्रभा *Mahatamah prabha*, in hue like pitch darkness.

The वातमलय, *vata valayas*, or atmospheres are each 20,000 योजन, *yojanas* thick at the bottom of the Universe.

Each one of these earths is separated from the next by an interval of one *raju*.

In each of these intervals there are the 3 atmospheres also supporting the upper earth.

Ratna Prabha is 1,80,000 *yojanas* thick. It has 3 parts. The uppermost, *khara bhaga* is 16,000 *yojanas* thick. The 16 kinds of jewels, diamonds, etc., are found in it. In the middle 14,000 *yojanas* of these 16,000, there live all the 10 kinds of Residential (*Bhavanavasi*) celestial beings except the *Asura Kumara*, and all the 8 kinds of

Peripatetic (Vyantara), celestial beings the Raksasa.

The middle part is Panka bhaga, 84,000 yojanas thick. The Asura and Raksasa live here. The lowest part is Abbahula bhaga, 80,000 yojanas thick. The first hell is situated here, i. e. only in the mobile channel (Trasa nadi) of this part.

Sharkara Prabha is 32,000 yojanas thick. The second hell is situated in the mobile channel in this.

Valuka Prabha has 28,000 yojanas and the third hell.

Panka Prabha has 24,000 yojanas and the fourth hell.

Dhuma Prabha has 20,000 yojanas the fifth hell.

Tamah Prabha has 16,000 yojanas and the sixth hell.

Maha Tamah Prabha has 8,000 yojanas and the seventh hell.

SUTRA 2.

तासु त्रिंशत्पञ्चविंशतिपञ्चदशदशत्रिपञ्चोनेकनरकशतसहस्राणिपञ्चैव-
यथाक्रमम् ॥ २ ॥

**Tasu trinshatpachavinshatipanchadashattripanchonai
kanarakashatasahasranipanchachaivayathakramam.**

In these (earths there are the following) hells respectively:

30	lacs	(in the 1st),
25	"	(,, " 2nd),
15	"	(,, " 3rd);
10	"	(,, " 4th),
3	"	(,, " 5th),
99,995	(,,	" 6th),
5 lacs	(,,	" 7th);

Total 84 lacs.

The hellish beings are born and live in [these hells. These hells are really huge holes in which the hellish beings live. They are in different layers (Patala). The 1st to the 7th earths have 13, 11, 9, 7, 5, 3, and 1 layer for each of the 1st to the 7th hell respectively, i. e. 49 layers in all.

In each layer there is a central hole (Indraka bila), and lines (Sreni badbha) of holes in the 4 cardinal and 4 intermediate directions.

In the first layer, there are 49 in each of the cardinal directions, and 48 in each of the intermediate corners.

In the second layer, the numbers are 48 and 47, in the third, 47

and 46, till in the 49th layer, the number of holes is 1 and 0. Thus in the last or 49th layer there is a central hole and 4 holes in the East, West, North and South, 5 holes in all.

The rest of the holes in the 1st 6 hells are called sporadic (Prakirnaka. Thus there are:

49	Central (Indraka).
9604	in the 8 directions (Sreni baddha).
8390347	Sporadic (Prakirnaka).

84,00,000

SUTRA 3

नारका नित्याशुभतरलेस्यापरिणामदेहवेदनाविक्रिया : ॥ ३ ॥

Naraka nitya shubhatara lessya parinama deha vedana vikriyah.

Hellish beings always (have) very bad thought-colours, sense perceptions and their objects, bodies, feelings of pain and transformations.

Hellish beings always have the colour (लेस्या, *lessya*, the paint of body and thought, i. e. द्रव्यलेस्या *dravya lessya* and भावलेस्या *bhava lessya*) of the 3 lower lessyas, viz: कृष्ण black. नील indigo and कापोत grey.

Grey (कापोत, *kapota*) only in hells of 1st and 2nd earths; grey (कापोत) and indigo (नील, *nila*) in the 3rd, indigo only in the 4th, indigo and black (कृष्ण *krishna*) in the 5th, and (कृष्ण *krishna*) black in the 6th, and thus the 7th द्रव्यलेस्य, *dravya lessya* or body paint persists throughout life; but *bhava lessya* changes with the character of thought-activity. One special *bhava lessya* or thought-colour does not last for more than one मुहूर्त, *muhurta*, i. e. 48 minutes. Hellish beings also always have the lowest kinds of sense perceptions, i. e. the sound is harsh, touch is rough and hard, etc. Their environment, including themselves, is horrible.

Their bodies are also grotesque, e. g. हुण्डक, *hundaka*, disproportionate, as a small head with a huge trunk and long feet, etc. The height of the body in the first hell is 7 bows, 3 cubits and 6 fingers.

It doubles at each next hell, till in the 7th hell it is 500 bows, as 24 fingers = 1 cubit, and 4 cubits = 1 bow.

The pangs which they suffer are very acute and intense. They change their bodies at will, but the transformation is always of a low

and cruel character, such as that of a wolf, raven, etc., etc.

All the hells in the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th hells and the upper 2 lacs in the 5th hell are all hot. All the rest are cold.

SUTRA 4

परस्वरोदीरितदुःखा ॥ ४ ॥

Parasparo dirita dukkha

The tortures (of hellish beings are) produced (by them for) another.

SUTRA 5

संक्लिष्टासुरोदीरितदुःखाश्च प्राक् चतुर्थ्याः ॥ ५ ॥

Samklista suro dirita dukkhascha Prak chaturthyah.

Before the 4th (earth i. e. in the 1st, 2nd and 3rd earths, in the hells,) the evil-minded (celestial beings called) Asura kumaras also give torture (to the hellish beings or incite them to torture one another)

SUTRA 6

तेष्वेकत्रिसप्तदशसप्तदशाष्टाविंशतित्रयस्त्रिंशत्सागरोपमा सत्त्वानां परा
स्थितिः ॥ ६ ॥

**Tesveka trisaptadasha sapta dasha dvavinsati trayastrin-
shat sagaropama satvanam para sthithih.**

In these (seven hells) the maximum age of (hellish) beings (of different earths as follows :

- | | | |
|----|----------|--|
| 1 | सागरोपमा | <i>Sagropama</i> or सागर <i>sagara</i> (simply) in the 1st earth |
| 3 | " " | or <i>sagars</i> " " 2nd " |
| 7 | " " | " " 3rd " |
| 10 | " " | " " 4th " |
| 17 | सागरोपमा | <i>Sagropama</i> or <i>sagars</i> in the 5th earth. |
| 22 | " " | " " 6th " |
| 33 | " " | " " 7th " |

1 सागर *Sagara* = 10 × (crore×crore) of अक्षपत्य *addhapalya*.

1 अक्षपत्य, *Addhapalya* = A circular pit with a diameter of 1 योजन *yojana*, i. e., 2000 kosas and of an equal depth if filled with

the ends of the downy-hair of a lamb of 7 days, born in the highest bhoga bhumi उत्कृष्टभोगभूमि. One end of hair is taken out in every 100 years, The time taken to empty the pit is a व्याहारपल्या, *vyaaahara palya*. Innumerable *vyaaahara palyas* make one उद्धारपल्या *Uddhara palya*.

Innumerable *uddhara palyas* make one अद्धापल्या, *Addha palya*.

SUTRA 7

जम्बूद्वीपलवणोदादयः शुभनामानो द्वीपसमुद्राः ॥ ७ ॥

Jambu-dvipa lavano dadayah shubhana-mano dvipa samudrah.

Jambudvipa Continent, Lavana samudra (ocean). etc., (etc., are) the continents and oceans being pleasant names.

In the middle world (मध्यलोक *madhya loka*) there are innumerable *dvipas* (द्वीपाः) continents and *samudras* (समुद्राः) oceans.

They all have pleasant (or auspicious) names. Their names are:

- 1 जम्बूद्वीप, *Jambu dvipa*, in which we live.
लवणसमुद्र, *Lavana samudra*, salt ocean.
- 2 धातकीखण्डद्वीप, *Dhataki khanda dvipa*, then.
कालोदधिसमुद्र, *Kalodadhi samudra*, then.
- 3 पुष्करद्वीप, *Puskaravara dvipa*, then.
पुष्कर समुद्र, *Puskaravara samudra*, then.
- 4 वारुणीश्वरद्वीप, *Varunivara dvipa*,
वारुणीश्वरसमुद्र, *Varuuavara dvipa*,
- 5 क्षीरद्वीप, *ksiravara dvipa*,
क्षीर समुद्र, *ksiravara samudra*,
- 6 घृतद्वीप, *Ghritavara dvipa*,
घृतसमुद्र, *Ghritavara samudra*,
- 7 इक्षुद्वीप, *Iksuvara dvipa*,
इक्षुसमुद्र, *Iksuvara samudra*,
- 8 नन्दीश्वरद्वीप, *Nandishvara dvipa*,
नन्दीश्वर समुद्र, *Nandishvara samundra*,
- 9 अरुणद्वीप, *Arunavara dvipa*,
अरुणसमुद्र, *Arunavara samudra*,

The last ones are:

स्वयम्भुवद्वीप, *Svayambhu ramana dvipa*.

स्वयम्भुवसमुद्र, *Svayambhu ramana samudra*.

SUTRA 8

द्विद्विष्यन्माः पूर्वपूर्वपरिकल्पितो बलवाहृतवः ॥ ८ ॥

Dvirdvir viskambhah purvapurva pariksepino valaya kritayah.

(The oceans and continents each one have) twice the breadth (of the one immediately preceding it. Thus जम्बूद्वीप, Jambu dvipa is 1 lac योजन, *Yojanas* in breadth, the लवणसमुद्र, *Lavana samudra* is 2 lacs, the धातुकीलखण्डद्वीप, *Mhtuki khand dvipa* is 4 lacs and so on). Each one surrounds the one immediately preceding it. (They are all) anicular in form.

SUTRA 9.

तन्मध्येमेरुनाभिर्बुतो योजनशतसहस्रविष्कम्भो जम्बूद्वीपः ॥ ९ ॥

Tanmadhyemerunabhirvrittoyojanshatasahasraviskambho jambudvipah.

In the middle of these (concentric oceans and continents, is Jambudvipa which is) round (like the disc of the sun). In the centre of Jambu dvipa) like the navel (in the human body, is situated) mount meru. (Jambu dvipa is) 1 lac yojanas in breadth.

1 जेज्ज (big) yojana=2,000 kasas.

1 योजन (small) yojana=4 kosas.

Here the reference is to the big yojanas, 1 yojana = 2,000 kasas, 500 times the small one.

SUTRA 10

भरतहैमवतहरिविदेहरम्यकहैरण्यावतैरावतवर्षाःक्षेत्राणि ॥ १० ॥

Bharatahaimavataharivideharanyakahairanya-vatairava-rsahksettrani.

The divisions, Ksettras, (of Jambu dvipa are seven) भरत, *Bharata*, हैमवत, *Haimavata*, हरि, *Hari*, विदेह, *Videha*, रम्यक, *Ramyaka*, हरण्यावत, *Hairanyavata* and ऐरावत, *Airavata*.

SUTRA 11.

तद्विभाजिनः पूर्वपरायता हिमवन्महाहिमवन्निषिधनीलरुक्मिशिखरिरणो वर्षधर-
पर्वताः ॥ ११ ॥

**Tadvibhajinahpurvaparayata-himavanmahahimavan-
nisidhanilarukmishikharino varsadharaparvatah.**

Dividing these (7 क्षेत्र Ksettras there are 6) mountains. (They are :) हिमवन् *Himavan*, महाहिमवन् *Maha-himavan*, निषिध *Nisidha*, नील *Nila*, रुक्मि *Rukmi*, and शिखरी *Shikharī*. (These mountains) run East to West.

SUTRA 12

हेमाजुं नतपनीयवर्हीर्यैरजतहैममयाः ॥ १२ ॥

Hemarjjunatapaniyavaiduryarajatahemamayah.

(The 1st mountain, i.e., हिमवन् *Himavan*, is) golden in colour ; (the 2nd silvery white), (the 3rd red, like red-hot gold, (the 4th is) blue (like the neck of a peacock,) (the 5th) silvery (white), (and the 6th) golden मया (*maya*) in this sutra means like.

SUTRA 13

मणिविचित्रपाश्वर्वा उपरिसूले च तुल्यविस्ताराः ॥ १३ ॥

Manivichitraparshva upari mule cha tulyavistarah.

The sides (of these 6 mountains are) studded with various jewels, (and they are of) equal width at the foot, the top and (the middle).

SUTRA 14

पद्ममहापद्मतिगिच्छकेसरिमहापुण्डरीकपुण्डरीका हृदास्तेषामुपरि ॥ १४ ॥

**Padmamahapadmatiginchhakesharimahapundrikapun-
drikahradastesamupari.**

On the top of these (mountains there are the following 6) lakes, (respectively :) पद्म *Padma*, महापद्म *Mahapadma*, तिगिच्छ *Tiginchha*, केसरि *Keshari*, महापुण्डरीक *Mahapundrika*, and पुण्डरीक *Pundrika*.

SUTRA 15

प्रथमो योजनसहस्रायामस्तदर्थे विष्कम्भो हृदः ॥ १५ ॥

Prathamo yojanasahasrayamastadarddhaviskambo hradah

The first lake (has a) length (of) 1000 yojanas (and a) breadth (of) half of that, (i.e., 500 yojanas).

SUTRA 16

दशयोजनावगाहः ॥ १६ ॥

Dashayojanavagah.

(The first lake has a) depth (of) 10 yojanaa.

SUTRA 17

तन्मध्ये योजन पुष्कर ॥ १७ ॥

Tanmadhyeyojanampuskaram.

In the centre of this (first lake there is a) lotus like (island), one yojana (broad).

SUTRA 18

तद्विगुणद्विगुणा ह्रदाः पुष्कराणि च ॥ १८ ॥

Taddvigunadvigunahradahpuskaranicha.

(Each of the three) lakes (up to तिगिन्हा *Tiginchha*) (is) twice (in length, breadth and depth of the lake), and (each of the 3) islands (also of) twice (the breadth of the island in the lake immediately preceding it).

SUTRA 19

तन्निवासिन्यो देव्यः श्रीह्रीधृतिकीर्तिबुद्धिलक्ष्म्यः पत्योपमस्थितयः ससामानिक-
परिषत्काः ॥ १९ ॥

**Tannivasinyo devya hshrihridhrtikirtibuddhilaksm-
yah palyopamasthitayah sasamanikaparisatkah.**

The goddesses residing in those (5 islands are, respectively :) श्री *Shri*, ह्री, *Hri*, धृति, *Dhrti*, कीर्ति *Kirti*, बुद्धि, *Buddhi* and लक्ष्मी, *Laksmi*. (each one of the goddesses has a) life span of one मया (*Addha*) पत्य, *palya*. (These goddesses live) with (celestial beings of an equal status with them, called) सामानिक *Samanika*, (and with celestial beings who are members of their courts, called) परिषद् *Parishad*.

SUTRA 20

गंगासिन्धुरोहिद्रोहितास्याहरिद्धरिकान्तासीतासीतोदानारीनरकान्तासुवर्णरु-
प्यङ्गुलारङ्गारक्तोदाः सरितस्तन्मध्यगाः ॥ २० ॥

Ganga sindhu rohidro hitasya hariddharikanta sita

**sitoda nari narakanta suvarna rupyakula rākta rakto-
dah saritas tan madhyagah.**

The rivers गंगा, the Ganga, सिन्धु, the Sindhu, रोहिता, the Rohit, रोहित-
स्या, the Rohitasya, हरित, the Harit, हरिकान्ता, the Harikanta, सीता, the Sita,
सीतोदा, the Sitoda, नारी, the Nari, नरकान्ता, the Narakanta, सुवर्णकुला, the
Suvaranakula, रूप्यकुला, the Rupyakula, रक्ता, the Rakta, रक्तोदा, the Rakto-
da, the Raktoda, flow in those (seven ksetras ; 2 in each respectively,
i. e., Ganga, and Sindhu in Bhairta, Rohit and Rohitasya in Haimvata,
etc., etc.)

SUTRA 21

द्वयोर्द्वयोः पूर्वाः पूर्वगाः ॥ २१ ॥

Dvayordvayoh purvah purvagah.

(These 14 rivers must be taken in groups) of 2 each. The first
(of each group as named above,) flows eastwards (and falls into the
ocean there).

SUTRA 22

शेषास्त्यपरगाः ॥ २२ ॥

Shesastva paragah.

But the others flow westwards (and fall into the ocean there.)
These rivers have their sources as follows :

Ganga, Sindhu and Rohitasya,	spring from the lake Padma.
Rohita and Harikanta	" " Maha Padma.
Harit and Sitoda	" " Tiginchha.
Sita and Narakanta	" " Keshari.
Nari and Rupyakula	" " Mahapundarika.
Suvarnakula, Rakta and Raktoda spring	" Pundarika.

SUTRA 23

चतुर्दशानदीसहस्रपरिवृता गंगासिन्धवादयो नद्याः ॥ २३ ॥

**Chaturdashanadi sahasra parivṛta ganga sindhavadayo
nadyah.**

Ganga and Sindhu have 14,000 tributary rivers each, and others,
i.e., the next pair (Rohit and Rohitasya) have twice, i.e., 28,000 each.
Harit and Harikanta have 56,000 each, Sita and Sitoda have 1,12,000

each. Nari and Narkanta have 56,000 ; Suvarnakula, Rupyakula 28,000 and Rakta, Raktoda 14,000 each.

SUTRA 24

भरतः षड्विंशतिषण्चभोजनययविस्तारः षट्चैकोनविंशति भागा भोजनस्य ॥ २४ ॥

Bharatah sad vinsati pancha yojana shata vistarah
sat chaikona vinshati bhaga yojanasya.

Bharat ksetra, in its widest part, measure 526½ yojanas.

SUTRA 25

तद्विगुणद्विगुणविस्तारा वर्षषरवर्षा विदेहान्ताः ॥ २५ ॥

Tadviguna dviguna vistara varshadhara varsha vide-
hantah.

Each mountain and ksetra in breadth has double the breadth of the mountain or ksetra preceding it. (This is upto) Videha.

Thus Bharata ksetra is 526½ yojanas in breadth, the Himavana mountain is double of this, i.e., 1052½ yojanas, and so on.

SUTRA 26

उत्तरा दक्षिणतुल्याः ॥ २६ ॥

Uttara daksina tulyah.

To the north (of videha, the arrangement and extent of ksetras, mountains, rivers, lakes, islands is exactly) corresponding to (those in) the south (of it.)

SUTRA 27

भरतैरावतयोर्बुद्धिहासो षट्समयाभ्यामुत्सर्पिण्यवसर्पिणीभ्याम् ॥ २७ ॥

Bharatairavatayorvrddhiraasan utsarpinyavasarpinibhyam.

In Bharata and Airavata ksetras (in the extreme south and north o Jambudivpa there is) increase and decrease of (bliss, age, height, etc. of their inhabitants in the 2 aeons), utsarpini (उत्सर्पिणी) and Avasarpini (अवसर्पिणी) (the aeons of increase and decrease respectively). There are 6 ages (in each aeon).

The ages in avasarpini, the present aeon are सुखमासुखमा, *Sukhama-sukhama*, सुखमा, *Sukhama*, सुखमादुःखमा, *Sukhama-Dukkhama*, दुःखमासुखमा, *Dukhama-sukhama*, दुःखमा, *Dukhama*, and दुःखमादुःखमा, *Dukhama-dukhama*. We are now in the *Dukhama* or the 5th age (पंचमकाल); this began in about 513 B.C., i. e., 3 years, 8½ months after the liberation of Lord Mahavira, and its total duration is 21,000 years. The sequence of ages in the utsarpini is the reversing of the order of the Avasarpini and therefore the last 3 of the Utsarpini are ages of भोगभूमि, *Bhoga-bhumi*; the rest are of कर्मभूमि, *Karma-bhumi*;

Each aeons is of $10 \times (1 \text{ crore} \times 1 \text{ crore})$ सागर *sagaras*.

In Avasarpini, the ages have their duration as follows:

1st = $4 \times (1 \text{ crore} \times 1 \text{ crore})$ sagras.

2nd = 3 " " "

3rd = 2 " " "

4th = 1 " " „ minus 42,000 years.

5th = 21,000 years.

6th = 21,000 years.

Altogether $10 \times (1 \text{ crore} \times 1 \text{ crore})$ sagaras, i. e., दशकोशकोशो सागर,

SUTRA 28

ताभ्यमपरा भूमयोऽवस्थिताः ॥ २८ ॥

Tabhyamapra bhumayo avasthita.

Excepting these two (Bharata and Airavata), the other (five) Earths are constant. (There is no increase or decrease in bliss, age, height etc. there).

SUTRA 29

एकद्वित्रिपत्योपमस्थितयो हैमवतकहारिवर्षकदैवकुरवकाः ॥ २९ ॥

Ek dvitripalyopamasthitayo haimvatakaharivarsak daivakurvakah.

(The men and animals) of Himvana, Harivarsak, Devakurnu, (bhoga-bhumi) are respectively of the one, two and three palyas.

SUTRA 30

तथोत्तराः ॥ ३० ॥

Tathottarah.

(The condition of things is) the same in the north (of mount

Meru (मेरु) Devakuru, Hari and Haimavata are replaced by Uttarakuru, Ramyaka and Hairanyavata.

SVTRA 31

विदेहेषु संख्येयकालाः ॥ ३१ ॥

Videhesu samkhyeya kalah.

In videha (men have an age of) numerable (संख्येय) years, i. e., the highest is 1 crore पूर्व, *purvas* and the least is अन्तर्मुहूर्त, *antara-muhurta*.

84 lac years = 1 purvanga (पूर्वांग).

84 lac years 2 = 1 purva = 7056000000000.

∴ 1 crore purva = 70560000000000,0000000 years.

SUTRA 32

भरतस्य विष्कम्भो जम्बूद्वीपस्य नवतिशतभागः ॥ ३२ ॥

Bharatasya viskambho jambudvipasya navatishatabhagah.

The breadth of Bharata Ksetra (is) 190 th part of the breadth of

Jambu dvipa ($= \frac{100000}{190} = 526 \frac{6}{19}$ yojanas).

SUTRA 33

द्विर्धतिकीर्णदे ॥ ३३ ॥

Dvir dhatakikhande.

In the Dhatakikhanda (which is the next region after salt ocean, लवणसमुद्र, the number of ksetras, mountains, rivers, lakes, etc. is) double (of that in जम्बूद्वीप, *Jambu dvipa*).

SUTRA 34

पुष्करार्द्धे च ॥ ३४ ॥

Puskararddhe cha.

In (the nearest) half of Puskaradvipa also (the number of ksetras, etc. is double of that in Jambudvipa).

SURTA 35

प्राङ्मानुषोत्तरान्मनुष्याः ॥ ३५ ॥

Prañmanusottaranmanusyah.

On this side of Manusottara (alone) there are men.

In the middle of Puskaravara dvīpa (पुष्करवर्दीप) running all round it, is Manusottara (मानुषोत्तर) mountain. It is so called because man is neither found nor born except on this side of it.

SUTRA 36

आर्यो म्लेच्छश्च ॥ ३६ ॥

Arya mlecchhascha.

(The human beings in these 2½ regions, अर्धद्वीप, are of two kinds):
आर्य, *Arya* and म्लेच्छ, *Mlecchha*, (i. e. respectively those who care and do not care for religion). Human beings are of 2 kinds :

आर्य, *Arya*, noble, worthy, respectable.

म्लेच्छ, *Mlecchha* ; barbarian, non-Aryan, low, savage. Arya are of 2 kinds :

ऋद्धिप्राप्त, *Riddhi Prapta*, with supernatural powers.

अनृद्धिप्राप्त, *Anriddhi prapta*, without supernatural powers.

ऋद्धि, *Riddhi* is of 7 kinds :

1. बुद्धि, *Buddhi*, Enlightenment.
2. विक्रिया, *Vikriya*, Capacity to change the body at will.
3. तप, *Tapa*, Austerities.
4. बल, *Bala*, Miraculous strength.
5. औषध, *Ausadha*, Healing power.
6. रस, *Rasa*, Capacity of an evil eye and its opposite, etc.
7. अक्षिण, *Aksina*, Capacity of making stores, place, etc., in exhaustible.

There are 64 sub-classes of these 7.

अनरिद्धि, आर्य, *Anriddhi Aryas* are of 5 kinds :

1. क्षेत्र, *Ksetra*, born in Aryakhandā, one of the 6 divisions of Bharata-ksetra.
2. जाति, *Jati*, born in high families like Ikshvaku, Suryavansa, Nativansa, etc., etc.
3. कर्म, *Karma* Arya by pursuit of, military, Literary, Agriculture, Trade, Arts, Service,
4. चरित्र, *Charitra*, Arya by right conduct.
5. दर्शन, *Darshana*, Arya by right belief.

म्लेच्छाः, *Mlecchhas* are of 2 kinds :

1. कर्मभूमिज, *Karma bhumiya*, i. e. born in the 5 *Mlecchhas* divi-

sions each of the 5 Bharataksetra, and 5 Airavata, and 800 in the Videhas. The total divisions are $5 \times 5 + 5 \times 5 + 800 = 850$.

1. **अन्तरद्वीपः, Antara-dvipaja**, i. e. inter-continental Mlechchhas.

There are 24 islands in **लवणोदधि, Lavanodadhi**, the first ocean round the first continent, Jambu-dvipa.

These islands are peopled by grotesque creatures, with boars, elephants, horses, and head on a human body, or with long ears, one leg, and similar grotesque formations of the body. Their age is one palya कल्प, and they live on fruits, etc. of trees.

500 yojanas from the circumference of Jambu-dvipa, these 24 islands are situated in a circle in the **लवणसमुद्र, Lavana Samudra**. The islands in the 4 cardinal directions are 100 yojanas in breadth, The 4 corner ones are 55 yojanas, and the remaining 16 are 50 yojanas in breadth. These 16 are 550 (instead of 500) yojanas from the circumference of Jambu-dvipa.

SUTRA 37

भरतेरावत विदेहा : कर्मभूमयोऽन्यत्र देवकुरुतरकुरुम्भः ॥ ३७ ॥

**Bharatairavata videhah karmabhumayo anyatra devakuru-
ruttara kurubhyah.**

Bharata, Airavata and Videha ksetras, except Deva Uttara-kurus (are the only regions where we find) Karma-bhumi, (i.e. agriculture, etc., for sustenance). This is also the region of piety and place from where liberation can be attained.

SUTRA 38

नृस्थिती परजवरे त्रिपल्योपमान्तर्मुहूर्ते ॥ ३८ ॥

Nristhiti paravare tripalyopamantar muhurte.

The age of human beings (ranges from) a maximum of 3 Palyas to a minimum of one Antara-muhurta.

Infinite \times infinite atoms	= 1 <i>Utsanjasanjna</i> (उत्सर्जसांज्ञा)
8 Utsanjasanjna	= 1 <i>Sanjasanjna</i> (संज्ञासंज्ञा).
8 Sanjasanjna	= 1 <i>Trti-renu</i> (त्रुदरेणु)
8 Truti-renu	= 1 <i>Trasa-renu</i> (त्रसरेणु)
8 Trasa-renu	= 1 <i>Ratha renu</i> (रथरेणु)
8 Ratha-renu	= 1 hair point of a hairbin highest enjoyment-land (अङ्गुष्ठमोक्षभूमि).

8 Such Hair Points	= 1 hair point middle (मध्यम) enjoyment-land.
8 " "	= 1 " " lowest (न्यूनम्) Enjoyment-land.
8 " "	= 1 hair-point- enjoyment-land, action-land (कर्मेभ्यः).
8 " "	= 1 Lisa nit (yonug louse or egg of a louse).
8 Nits	= 1 Yuka louse.
8 Lice	= 1 Yava madhya barley-seed (in its diameter).
8 Barley-seeds,	= 1 Utseda Angula, उत्सेदमंगुल, (small finger) in its breadth.
[500 Utseda Angulas	= 1 Pramana Angula, प्रमाणांगुल, (big finger).
6 Angula	= 1 Pada (पद)
2 Pada	= 1 Vitasti (span) वितस्ति
2 Vitasti	= 1 Latha (cubit) लाथ
2 Cubits	= 1 Kiku किकु
2 Kikus	= 1 Dhanusya (bow) धनुष
2,000 Bows	= 1 Kosa कोश
4 Kosas	= 1 Yojana योजन

[∴ A big or Pramana =500 small yojanas
=2,000 kosas].

By the *Pramana Angula* प्रमाणांगुल or 500 times of the ordinary measure, continent, oceans, etc. are measured.

जगत्श्रेणि, *Jagat shreni* = 7 *Rajus* राजू, this is the length of the Universe at its lowest point.

जगत्प्रतर *Jagat Pratara* = 7 *Rajus* × 7 *Rajus* = 49 square *Rajus*, the area of the base of the Universe.

जगत् कल(लोक), *Jagat-ghana* or *Loka* = (7 *Rajus*)³ = 343 cubic *Rajus*, the volume of the Universe.

SUTRA 39'

तिर्यग्योनिजानां च ॥३९॥

Tiryagyoni janam cha.

The sub-human beings also (have the same range of age :)

	Maximum age	Minimum age
Earth bodied	22,000 years	one antara- muhurta
Vegetable bodied	10,000 "	
Water bodied	7,000 "	
Air bodied	3,000 "	
Fire bodied	3 days	
2 sensed	12 years	
3 "	49 days	
4 "	6 months	
5 " fish, etc.	1 crore purvas year	
Mongoose	9 purvangas "	
Serpent	42,000 years	
Birds	72,000 "	
Quadrupeds	3 Palyas	



अध्याय चौथा

CHAPTER IV

SUTRA 1

देवाश्चतुर्णिकायाः ॥ १ ॥

Devashchaturni Kayah.

Celestial beings (are of) four orders, groups or classes :

भवनवासी, *Bhavana-vasi*, Residential,

पर्वतर, *Vyantara*, Peripatetic,

ज्योतिष्क, *Jyotiska*, Stellar.

वैमानिक *Vaimanika*, Heavenly.

SUTRA 2

आदितस्त्रिषु पीतान्तलेस्याः ॥ २ ॥

Aditastrisu pitanta lesyah.

From the first to the third (have 4) lesyas or paints up to yellow,
i.e., कृष्ण, *Black*, नील, *Indigo*, कापोत, *Grey* and पीत, *Yellow*.

SUTRA 3

दशाष्टपञ्चद्विदशविकल्पाः कल्पोपपन्नपर्यन्ताः ॥ ३ ॥

**Dashasta pancha dvadasha vikalpah
kalpopapanna paryantah.**

भवनवासी, Residential celestial beings are of 10 classes.

पर्वतर, *Peripatetic* „ „ „ 8 „

ज्योतिष्क, *Stellar* „ „ „ 5 „

कल्पवासी, *Heavenly* „ „ „ 12 „

Total „ „ 35 Classes.

(All these kinds are) born up to the Kalpa (the 16 heavens).
Beyond that 16th heaven, they are all alike, there are no classes. The
Heavenly have 12 classes, because there are 12 Indras in 16 heavens.

SUTRA 4

इन्द्रसामानिकत्रायस्त्रिंशपारिषदास्मरक्षलोकपालानीकप्रकीर्णकाभियोग्यकिल्बि-
षिकश्चैकशः ॥ ४ ॥

**Indra samanika trayastrimsha parisadatma raksa loka pala
nika prakirnakabhiyogka kilbisikashchaikashah.**

Every class (has) 10 (grades) :

Indra Powerful and of Supreme authority, like a king.

Samanika Powerful but not authoritative like Indra , like
father, teacher.

Trayastrins Like minister or priest, so-called they are
33 in number.

Parisad „ Courtiers.

Atma-raksta „ Body-guards.

Loka-pala „ The police, the protectors of the people.

Anika „ The army.

Prakirnaka „ The people.

Abhiyogya „ That grade of celestial beings who form
themselves into conveyances as horse, lion,
swan, etc., etc., for the other grades.

Kilbisika „ That servile grade.

SUTRA 5

त्रायस्त्रिंशलोकपालवर्ज्या व्यन्तरज्योतिष्काः ॥ ५ ॥

Traystrisha lokapala varjya vyantara jyotiskah.

But the Peripatetic and Stellar celestial beings, the grades of
Trayastrinsa, like Minister or Priest, and Lokapala like the police, are
denied.

SUTRA 6

पूर्वयोर्द्विन्द्राः ॥ ६ ॥

Purvayor dvindrah.

In the first two, (i. e. Residential and Peripatetic orders, there
are) two Indras (or kings in each of them 10 and 8 classes respec-
tively).

SUTRA 7

कायप्रवीचाराप्राप्तिनात् ॥ ७ ॥

Kaya pravichara Aaishanat.

Up to Isāna (or the 2nd heaven, celestial beings which include all Residential, Peripatetic and Stellar celestial beings) have bodily sexual enjoyment (like human beings).

SUTRA 8

शेषाः स्पर्शरूपशब्दजनैः प्रवीचाराः ॥ ८ ॥

Shesah sparsha rupa shabda manah pravicharah.

The others have the sexual enjoyment by means of touch, sight of beauty, sound and mind (as follows):

In 3rd and 4th heavens by touch only.

In 5, 6, 7, and 8th „ „ sight only.

In 9, 10, 11, and 12th „ „ sound only as songs, etc.

In 13, 14, 15, and 16th „ „ mind only.

SUTRA 9

परेऽप्रवीचारा ॥ ९ ॥

Pareapravi charah.

The remaining (celestial beings are) without sexual desire. (There are no goddesses there. Beyond the 16th heaven there is only the male sex).

SUTRA 10

भवनवासिनोऽसुरनागविद्युत्सुपर्णाग्निवातस्तनितोदधि द्वीपदिकुमारा ॥ १० ॥

Bhavana vasino asurnaga vidyut suparnagni vata stanito dadhidvipa dikkumarah.

(The 10 classes of) Residential celestial beings (are): Asura-kumara, Naga, Vidyuta, Suparna, Agni, Vata, Stanita, Udadhi, Dvipa and Dik Kumara.

They are called Kumaras, because their lives and habits are like of youths of under 20 who are called kumaras.

The Residentials (भूतवासी) live as follows: In the first earth, Ratnaprabha, there are three strata, one above the other with an interval of 1000 yojanas. The first is called kharabhaga (खराभग) this is the abode of 9 classes of Residentials, i. e. of all except Asura Kumaras. The Asuras reside in the 2nd stratum called panka-bhaga (पंकभाग) In the third or lowest stratum, called Abbahula-bhaga (अब्बहुलभाग), there is situated the 1st hell,

SUTRA 11

व्यन्तराः किन्नरकिम्पुरुषमहोरगर्षव्यक्षराक्षसभूतपिशाचाः ॥ ११ ॥

Vyantarāh kinnara kimpurusa mahoraga gandharva yaksa
naksasa bhuta pishachah.

The (classes of) Peripatetics (are) :

1. Kinnara.
2. Kimpurusha.
3. Mahoraga.
4. Gandharva.
5. Yaksha.
6. Rakshasa.
7. Bhuta.
8. Pishacha.

Some of these live in the innumerable Oceans and Continents, i. e., all excepts the Rakshasa, live in the khara-bhaga or first uppermost stratum of the first earth Ratnaprabha. The Rakshasas live in the 2nd or panka-bhaga of the same.

SUTRA 12

ज्योतिष्काः सूर्याचन्द्रमसौग्रहनक्षत्रप्रकीर्णितारकाश्च ॥ १२ ॥

Jyotiskah surya chandramasau graha nakshatra prakirnika
tarakascha.

The classes of settlers are :

1. Surya, the sun.
2. Chandrama, the moon.
3. Graha, the planets.
4. Nakshatra, the constellations.
5. Prakirnika taraka, scattered stars.

The stellars begin at a height of 790 yojanas (each of 2000 kosas) from the level of the earth on which we are. The lowest are the stars.

10 yojanas above them are the suns, 80 yojanas above the suns are the moons, 4 yojanas above the moons are the 27 nakshatras, 4 yojanas above the nakshatras is the Budha, the planet mercury. 3 yojanas above them, is the Shukra, the Planet Venus, 3 yojanas above them the Vṛhaṣṛati the planet Jupiter, 3 yojanas above them is the Mangala or Angaraka, the planet Mars, 3 yojanas above them is the Sanaishchara, the planet Saturn.

Thus up to 900 yojanas from the earth-level upwards are found the stellar order of celestial beings. The yojana here is 2000 kosas.

SUTRA 13

मेरुप्रदिक्षणानित्यमतवोनृलोके ॥१३॥

Meru pradiksana nitya gatayo nrloke.

In the human regions, (i. e., the 2½ dvipas, the stellars) always move round (their respective) Mount Meru, (but their nearest orbit to the Central Meru in Jambu-dvipa has a radius of 1121 yojanas. That is, they never appear in a circle of 1121 yojana-radius, round the Central Meru.)

SUTRA 14

तत्कृतःकालविभागः ॥ १४ ॥

Tatkrtah kala vibhagah.

Divisions of time (are) caused by those (movements of the stellars).

SUTRA 15

बहिरवस्थिताः ॥ १५ ॥

Bahiravasthitah.

(The stellars) outside the 2½ dvipas i. e., beyond Manusottara mountain in the middle of Puskaravara dvipa, are) fixed. (They never move.)

SUTRA 16

वैमानिकाः ॥ १६ ॥

Vaimanikah.

Now we go on to) the heavenly beings.

SUTRA 17

कल्पोपपन्नाः कल्पातीताश्च ॥ १७ ॥

Kalpopannakalpatitashcha.

(These are of 2 kinds :)

Kalpopanna, born in the 16 heavens, and with 10 grades. These alone have 10 classes.

Kalpatita, born beyond the 16 heavens. They have no grades or classes. They are called *Ahamindra* अहमिन्द्र (lit. 'I am India'), and are all alike.

SUTRA 18

उपर्युपरि ॥ १८ ॥

Uparyupari.

The 16 heavens are situated in pairs, one (pair) above the other (The graineyakas, are also one above the other beyond the 16 heavens.)

SUTRA 19

सौधर्मेशानसानत्कुमारमाहेन्द्रब्रह्मब्रह्मोत्तरलान्तवकापिष्ठशुकमहाशुकसतारसहस्रारेष्वानतप्रताणतयोरारणाच्युतयोर्नवसुर्गं वेयकेषुविजयवैजयन्तजयन्तापराजितेषुसर्वार्थसिद्धौ च ॥ १९ ॥

Saudharmaishana sanatkumara mahendra brahma brahmottara lantava kapistha shukra maha shukra satara sahasraresvanata pranatayo rarana chyutayor navasu graiveyakesu vijaya vaijayanta jayanta parajitesu sarvartha siddhau cha.

(They कल्पवासी live) in :

1 सौधर्म Saudharma, 2 ईशान, Isan, 3 सानतकुमार, Sanatkumara, 4 माहेन्द्र Mahendra, 5 ब्रह्मा Brahma, 6 ब्रह्मोत्तर Brahmottara, 7 लान्तव Lantava, 8 कापिष्ठ Kapistha, 9 शुक Shukra, 10 महाशुक Mahashukra, 11 सतार Satara, 12 सहस्रार Sahasrara, 13 आनत Anat, 14 अप्रणत Pranata, 15 आरणा Arana and अच्युत 16 Achyuta.

(Above these 16 heavens, the abodes of अहमिन्द्र Ahamindras are :)

9 नववेक Graiveyaka (heavens ;)

9 अनुदिश Anudisha (,)

5 अनुर, Anuttara (heavens, i. e.)

विजय, Vijaya, वैजयन्त, Vajayanta; जयन्त, Jayanta;
अपरजित, Aparajita; सार्वार्थसिद्धि, Sarvartha-siddhi,

Above the Sarvartha-siddhi, is the सिद्धक्षेत्र, Siddha-kshetra, the place of Liberated souls.

The first heaven सौधर्म Soudharama is the nearest, because its central heavenly car or abode (विमान Vimana) is only one hair's breadth from the top of the Central Meru, (सुरतेन मेरु). This Meru is 1,00,040 yojanas high, 1,000 yojanas of it are embedded in the earth, the rest is above, the top being 40 yojanas.

The दस्यवर्णी Heavenly have 12 classes because there are 12 Indras in the 16 heavens as follows :

The 1, 2, 3, 4 heavens have one Indra each i.e., 4 Indras					
named after their heavens.					
5, 6	"	"	"	only, i.e., 1	Brahmedra
7, 8	"	"	"	"	1 Lantava.
9, 10	"	"	"	"	1 Shukra.
11, 12	"	"	"	"	1 Satara
The 13, 14, 15, 16	"	"	"	"	4 named after their heavens.

Total Indras...12.

The 16 heavens have 52 layers (Patala), i.e., 31, 7, 4, 2, 1, 1 respectively for 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, and 6th pairs of heavens; and 6 for the 7th and the 8th pairs.

There are 9 for the 9 Graiveyakas,

1 " " 9 Anudisas,

1 " " 5 Anuttaras,

In all there are 63 layers (Patala).

SUTRA 20

स्थितिप्रभावाद्युत्तुलितोत्थाविष्टुदीन्ध्र्यावधिविषयतौऽधिकाः ॥ २० ॥

Stithi prabhava adhya dyuti lesya vishuddhindriya-
vadhivishayastondhikah.

Age, power, enjoyment, brilliance, purity of lesya (paint and thought colour) sense-faculties, visual knowledge--(all) these go on increasing (as we go from the lower to the higher heavens.)

SUTRA 21

गतिशरीरपरिग्रहाभिमानतोहीनाः ॥ २१ ॥

Gati sharira parigraha bhimanato hinah.

Moving from place to place, height of body, attachment to world by objects, pride—these (go on) decreasing (as we go up to the higher heavens.)

e. g. in 1 and 2	heavens, stature is 7	hands (cubits).
3 and 4	" "	" 6 "
5 and 6, 7 and 8	" "	" 5 "
9 and 10, 11 and 12	" "	" 4 "
13 and 14	" "	" 3½ "
15 and 16	" "	" 3 "
In the 1, 2, 3 ग्रैवेयक, <i>graiveyaka</i>	stature is 2½	hands.
In the 4, 5, 6 "	" "	" 2 hands.
In the 7, 8, 9 "	" "	" 1½ hands.
In the 9 अनुदिश, <i>Anudisha</i>	" "	" 1½ hands.
In the 5 अनुतरविमान, <i>Anutra Viman</i>	" "	" 1 hand.

SUTRA 22

पीतपद्मशुक्ललेश्याद्वित्रिशेषेषु ॥ २२ ॥

Pita padma shukla leshya dvitri shesesu.

(There are) पीत yellow, पद्म pink, and शुक्ल white, लेश्या *lesya* in 2, 3 (pairs, and) the remaining (heavens).

Yellow (पीत) in 1 and 2 heavens | i. e., 2 pairs.
Yellow-pink in 3 and 4 "

Pink in 5 and 6, 7 and 8, and 9 and 10.

Pink-white in 11 and 12 heavens.

White in the rest of the heavens and higher regions.

SUTRA 23

प्राम्भवेयकम्यः कल्पाः ॥ २३ ॥

Pragraiveyakabhyah kalpah.

(The heavens) before (we reach). The Graiveyakas (are called) kalpas.

SUTRA 24

ब्रह्मलोकालयालोकान्तिकाः ॥ २४ ॥

Brahma lokalaya laukantikah.

(Having) Brahma-loka (as) abode (are) Laukantikas. The Lauk-

antika heavenly beings live in the highest parts of the 5th heaven, called Brahmaloka.

These are so called because their connection with loka has come to an end, i. e., in their next incarnation they shall be born as human beings and shall attain Liberation

SUTRA 25

सारस्वतादित्यवह्न्यरुणगर्दंतोयतुषिताव्याबाधारिष्टाश्च ॥ २५ ॥

Sarasvataditya vahnyaruna garadatoya tusita vyabadharistascha.

(These Laukantikas are of the following 8 classes :)

सारस्वत *Saraswat*, आदित्य *Aditya*, वह्नि *Vahni*, रुण्य *Aruna*, गर्दंतोय *Gardatoya*, तुषति *Tusita*, व्याबाध *Avyabadha*, and ऋष्टि *Arista*,

There are 16 more classes, 2 in the 8 intervals formed by the above 8 classes. In all, there are 24 classes. The names of their heavens take after them.

They are all alike and independent; and without sexual desire and therefore called देवर्षि *Devarsi*. They descend and attend to the Tirthankaras, when the latter make up their minds to renounce the world.

The number of Laukantika celestial being is 4,07,806.

SUTRA 26

विजयादिषु द्विचरमाः ॥ २६ ॥

Vijayadisū dvicharmah.

In the (4 अनुत्तर *Anuttara* heavens, i. e.,) *Vijaya*, etc., (i. e. *Vijayanta Jayanta*, *Aparajita*, and the 9 अनुदिश *Anudishas*, those heavenly beings are born, who shall attain Liberation at the most after having incarnated (as a human being) twice.

[All these are beings with right belief (सम्यग्दर्शन)]

SUTRA 27

अपुपपादिकमनुष्येभ्यः शेषास्तिर्यग्योनयः ॥ २७ ॥

Aupapadika manusyebhyah shesastiryagyonayah.

Other than those born by instantaneous rise, (i. e., hellish and celestial beings) and human beings, are sub-human beings, i. e., *Triyancha* तिर्यन्च.

Fine, one-sensed sub-humans are found everywhere in the Universe. Gross one-sensed are also in the whole Universe, but not everywhere like the fine one-sensed ones. The sub-humans from 2 to 5 sensed beings are only in the Mobile Channel (Trasa-nadī).

SUTRA 28

स्थितिरसुरनगसु पर्याद्वीपशेषाणां सागरोपमत्रिपल्योपमार्द्धहीनमिता ॥२८॥

Sthitirasura naga suparna dvipa seshanam sagropam: tripalyo-pamarddha hina mitah.

The (maximum) age of :

असुर Asura, measures	1	Sagara, सागर
नगा Naga, „	3	Palya पल्य
सुपर्ण Suparna, „ $\frac{1}{2}$ less, (i. e., 2 $\frac{1}{2}$)	„	„
द्वीप Dvīpa, „	2	„
and of the other (6 classes)	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	„

SUTRA 29

सौधर्मेशानयोःसागरोपमेऽधिके ॥ २९ ॥

Saudharmai shanayoh sagaropame adhike.

In the Saudharma and Ishana (i. e., 1st and 2nd heavens, the maximum age is) a little over 2 Sagaras.

SUTRA 30

सानत्कुमारमाहेन्द्रयोःसप्त ॥ ३० ॥

Sanatkumara mahendrayoh sapta.

In the Sanatkumar Mahendra, (i. e., 3rd and 4th heavens, the maximum age is a little over) 7 sagaras.



SUTRA 31

त्रिसप्तनवैकादशत्रयोदशपञ्चदशसप्तिरधिकानितु ॥ ३१ ॥

Tri sapta navaikadaasha trayodasha panchadasha 'bhira-dhikanitu.

And 3, 7, 9, 11, 13, and 15 added to (7 sagaras make up the maximum age of others.

In the 5th and 6th heavens, it is a little over 10 Sagaras.

" " 7th " 8th " " " " " 14 "

" " 9th " 10th " " " " " 16 "

" " 11th " 12th " " " " " 18 "

In the 13th and 14th heavens it is 20 sagaras.

" " 15th " 16th " " " 22 "

SUTRA 32

आरन्ध्राच्युतादूर्ध्वमेकाकेन नवसुगं ग्रेयकेषु विजयादिषु सपर्यति द्वौ च ॥ ३२ ॥

Aranachyuta durddhva mekaikina navasu graiveya-kesu vijayadisu sarvarthasiddau cha.

Above Arana and Achyuta, in the 9 Graiveyakas (it is) more and more by one sagara, (i. e., it is 23-31 sagaras respectively.) In the 9 Anudisas, (it is 32 sagaras and) in Vijaya, etc., (in the 5 Anuttaras it is 33 sagaras. But) in (the last Anuttara, i. e.,) Sarvarthasiddhi, (it is never less than 33 sagaras.)

SUTRA 33

अपरापल्योपमधिकम् ॥ ३३ ॥

Aparapalyopama madhikam.

(In the Saudharma and Ishana the) minimum (age is) a little over one palya.

SUTRA 34

परतः परतः पूर्वापूर्वमन्तरा ॥ ३४ ॥

Paratah paratah Purvapurva nantarah.

Further (and) further (on), the former (or maximum age becomes the minimum age for the next. As for the rest, the maximum age for the immediately preceding [region is the minimum for the next above it.)

SUTRA 35

नरकाणां च द्वितीयादिषु ॥ ३५ ॥

Narakanamcha dvitiyadisu.

The same (rule applies to the ages) of hellish beings, (i. e., the

maximum age of the 1st is the minimum) of the 2nd and so on.

SUTRA 36

दशवर्षसहस्रवारिप्रथमयाम् ॥ ३६ ॥

Dashavarsha sahasrani prathamayam.

(The minimum age of beings) in the first (hell is) 10,000 years.

SUTRA 37

भवनेषुच ॥ ३७ ॥

Bhavaneshucha.

(The minimum age) of Residentials भवनवासी (is also) the same (i. e., 10,000 years.)

SUTRA 38

व्यन्तराणां च ॥ ३८ ॥

Vyantaranamcha.

The same for Peripatetics, (i. e., the minimum is 10,000 years.)

SUTRA 39

परापत्योपमध्विकं ॥ ३९ ॥

Para palyopama madhikam.

The maximum (age for peripatetics is) a little over one palya.

SUTRA 40

ज्योतिष्काराणाम् ॥ ४० ॥

Jyotiskanam cha.

The stellars also (have a maximum of a little over one palya.

SUTRA 41

तदष्टभागोऽपरा ॥ ४१ ॥

Tadasta bhago apara.

The minimum (for the stellars is) $\frac{1}{8}$ of that, (i.e., a palya.)

SUTRA 42

लौकान्तिकानामष्टौ सागरोपमाणि सर्वेषाम् ॥ ४२ ॥

Laukantikanamastau sagaropamani servesam.

(The age) of the Laukantikas (is) 8 sagaras. (It is the same) for all.



अध्याय पांचवा

CHAPTER V

SUTRA 1

अजीवकाया धर्माधर्माकाशपुद्गलाः ॥ १ ॥

Ajivakaya dharma dharmakasha pudgalaḥ.

The non-soul extensive (substances are :)

धर्म Dharma, medium of motion to soul and matter,

अधर्म Adharma, „ „ rest „ „ „

अकाश Akasha, space and; and

पुद्गल Pudgala, matter.

काय Kaya means extensive, i. e., having extent like the body, i. e., occupying more than one प्रदेश Pradesha, spatial unit, or point. काल Kala, times has no extent, because its innumerable points, kalanus are packed full like a heap of jewels in universal space, but are never united one with the other.

SUTRA 2

द्रव्याणि ॥ २ ॥

Dravyani.

(They are also called) dravyas, substances.

6 Dravyas : The basic distinction is one. It is seen, it is undeniable. It is the distinction between the (the I) and the chair on which I sit. Technically it is the distinction between Jiva and Ajiva. It is perfect in Logic, and universally observable in experience.

Grouped round both of these and making these two, knowable and describable are time and space. Time and space are not one. Similarly the motion or rest—which are also observable in men and matter—are not one, though there is nothing which is neither at rest, nor in motion. Each condition is a condition of rest or motion.

Thus we get Jiva, soul, Ajiva, non-soul including matter, time, space, media of motion and of rest.

Substance is a group of attributes which are never separable one from the other. It is like a lump of sugar, every atom

of which has all the attributes of sugar, sweetness, crystal
lisation, whiteness, etc.

There are 6 such groups.

There is no attribute outside of these 6 groups.

Every substance has an infinity of attributes in it.

The full attributes of no substance can be given.

Attributes are in all the parts and modification of a substance,
i. e., of a group of attributes.

सामान्यगुण *Samanya-guna*, or common attributes are found in all
substances ; these are the attributes which are necessary
for the existence of the group as a group.

These are infinite but 6 are principal:

अस्तित्व...1. *Astitva*, Isness, Indestructibility, permanence, the
capacity by which substance cannot be destroyed.

कृतुत्व...2. *Vastutva*, Functionality, capacity by which substance
has a Function.

द्रव्यत्व...3. *Dravyatva*, Changeability, capacity by which it is al-
ways changing its modifications.

प्रमेयत्व...4. *Prameyatva*, Knowability, capacity of being known by
some one or of being the subject-matter of knowledge.

अणुलघुत्व...5. *Aguru-laghutva*, Individuality, capacity by which
one attribute or substance does not become another, and
the substance does not lose its attributes whose grouping
forms the substance itself. ३

प्रदेशत्व...6. *Pradeshatva*, Spatiality, capacity of having some kind
of form.

चेतनत्व...*Chetanatva*, Consciousness } are common attributes of the
अमूर्तत्व...*Amurtatva*, Immateriality } class of substance or group of
attributes, called soul.

अचेतनत्व...*Achetanatva*, Unconsciousness } are common to space,
अमूर्तत्व...*Amurtatva*, Immateriality } motion and rest and time

अचेतनत्व...*Achetanatva*, Unconsciousness } are common to Matter.
मूर्तत्व...*Murtatva*, Materiality.

विशेषगुण *Vishesa guna*, or special attributes of a particular
substance. These are the attributes which distinguish one
group from the others.

Modifications occur only in attributes.

Substance and Attribute are distinguishable according to their
name, number, differentia and function, i.e. respectively,
Sanjna, Sankhya, Laksana, Prayojana) ज्ञान, संख्या, लक्षण, प्रयोजन,)

The bottom reality is attributes. But always in 6 groups.

काय, *Kaya* is that which has extent, i. e. many प्रदेशाः, *Pardeshas*, i. e. occupies more than one unit of space. Kala, time, alone does not do so. Therefore is not *kaya*, or extensive the units of time, i. e. Kalanus, कालानु, are packed in Loka like a heap of jewels (रत्नराशि के समान).

विशेषगुण *Vishesha guna* or special attributes of each substance are :

- (1) जीव *Jiva*-soul—1. Knowledge (ज्ञान). (In its full form it arises only in the absence of knowledge-obscuring karma).
2. Conation (दर्शन) (In its full form it arises only in the absence of Conation obscuring karma)
3. Bliss (सुख). In its full form it arises only in the absence of all the 4 destructive karma)
4. Power (वीर्य). (In its full form it arises only in the absence of obstructive karmas, etc).
5. Right Belief (सम्बद्धदर्शन).
6. Right Conduct (सम्बद्धचरित्र) { In its full form it arises only in the absence of deluding karma.
7. अव्यावध, *Avyavadha*, Undisturbable, due to the absence of Vedaniya (Feeling) karma, neither pleasure nor pain.
8. अवगाह, *Avagaha*, due to the absence of body karma.
9. अगुरुलघुत्व, *Agurulaghutva*, due to the absence of family-karma.
10. सूक्ष्मत्व, *Suksmatva*, due to the absence of age.

The first 6 are अनुजीवी, *Anujivi*, attributes, which co-exist in and constitute the substance.

They arise fully only on the destruction of 4th destructive karmas, conation and knowledge obscuring, Deluding : and obstructive.

The last 4 are प्रतिजीवी (*Pratijivi*), attributes, which merely indicate the absence of their opposites.

They arise fully on the destruction of the 4 अव्यवस्था non-destructive karmas : वेदनीय, *Vedaniya*, Feeling; आयु, *age*, गोल family and दम body karmas.

(2) पुद्गल, *Pudgala*, matter. Special attributes are :

1. Touch, स्पर्श,
2. Taste, रस ;
3. Smell, गंध ; and
4. Colour, वर्ण.

(3) धर्म, *Dharma*, medium of motion.

(4) अधर्म, *Adharma*, medium of Rest.

(5) आकाश, *Akasha*, space, its function is to give place to others,

(6) काल *Kala*, Time ; it brings about modifications.

SUTRA 3

जीवाश्च ॥ ३ ॥

Jivashcha.

Jivas (or souls are) also (substances and extensive ones).

SUTRA 4

नित्यावस्थितान्यरूपाणि ॥ ४ ॥

Nitya vaasthitanya rupani.

(The above 5 extensive substances are) permanent in their nature, (and with काल *Kala*, time, are) fixed (as the sole constituents of the Universe,) (and are) devoid of touch, taste, smell and colour, (i. e. are अरूपी *Arupi*).

SUTRA 5

रूपिणः पुद्गलाः ॥ ५ ॥

Rupinah pudgalah.

(But) matter (is) *Rupi*, i. e. has touch, taste, smell and colour).

[Note—In Sūtras 3 and 5, the plural is used to indicate that souls are infinite and distinct, so are also particles of matter.]

SUTRA 6

आ आकाशादेकद्रव्यणि ॥ ६ ॥

A akasha deka dravyani.

Up to space, (i. e. *Dharma*, *Adharma* and *Akasha* are) one substance each, (They are indivisible wholes.)

SUTRA 7

निष्क्रियानि च ॥ ७ ॥

Niskriyani cha.

(These three are) not (capable of) moving (from place to place.)
Time substance also is incapable of motion. It is also Niskriya.

SUTRA 8

असंख्येयाः प्रदेशाः धर्माधर्मैकजीवानाम् ॥ ८ ॥

Asankhyeyah pradeshas dharmadharmaika jivanam.

(There are) innumerable Pradeshas of Dharma, Adharma and each soul.

(A Pradesha is the unit of space occupied by an atom of matter.)
The number of Pradeshas in Dharma Adharma, a Soul, and Lokakasa, i. e. the Universe, (i. e. all except pure space) is the same, i. e. it is innumerable (in all).

The soul fills the whole Universe only in Omniscient overflow. Otherwise it is extent equal to its mundane body, except in the Overflow (Samudghata). See Dravya Samgraha Gatha, 10, Vol. I. S. B. J. 28-31.

SUTRA 9

आकाशस्यानन्ताः ॥ ९ ॥

Akashasya-nantah.

(The Pradeshas) of space (are) infinite.

SUTRA 10

संख्येयाः संख्येयाश्च पुद्गलानाम् ॥ १० ॥

Sankhyeya asankhyeyascha pudgalanam.

(The atoms) of matter (are) numerable, (संख्येयाः Sankhyeya), innumerable (असंख्येयाः Asankhyeya), and अनन्त Ananta, infinite (according to their different molecular compositions).

One atom of matter, if free, occupies a unit of space i. e. a Pradesha. Infinite atoms will imply infinite Pradeshas of matter in Lokakasa. But this only if they are all free, i. e. the whole matter of the Universe exists only in atomic form. This it does not. There-

fore there is no real contradiction between this and the 8th Sutra, because a molecule of, e. g., 3 atoms of matter may occupy less space than is represented by 3 Pradeshas, which would be necessary for the 3 atoms in their free condition. The material atoms have the capacity of compressing an infinite number of themselves into one molecule which may not occupy more than one Pradesha.

This may be illustrated roughly. A saccharin pill compresses the sweetness of many lumps of sugar in it. In the form of the pill, those lumps occupy much less space than otherwise. As the space in a room may be occupied by the light of one lamp and also by 50 other lamps if they are brought there.

SUTRA 11

नानोः ॥ ११ ॥

Nanoh.

(There are)no (unmerable Pradeshas) of an atom.

An atom occupies always one Pradesha. It follows from the definition of Pradesha.

SUTRA 12

लोकाकाशेऽवगाहः ॥ १३ ॥

Lokakasheavagahah.

The place (of these substances is only) in the Lokakasa, Universe.

This division into universe and non-universe (loka and aloka) is based on Dharma and Adharma. Souls and matter move on and rest up to the confines of the Universe only.

SUTRA 13

धर्मधर्मयोः कृत्स्ने ॥ १३ ॥

Dharmadharmayoh kritsne.

Of Dharma and Adharma (the place is) in the whole (Universe).

SUTRA 14

एकप्रदेशादिषु भाज्यः पुद्गलानाम् ॥ १४ ॥

Eka pradeshadisu bhajyah pudgalanam.

In one pradesha space (in 2 pradeshas-space, in 3 pradesha-space),

etc., (upto lokakasa, i. e. the universe, only 1, 2 or 3. etc. atoms) of matter (will find) distribution of place (if they are in a free condition, but in a molecular form any number of atoms can occupy any one of those spaces).

SUTRA 15

असंख्येयभागादिषु जीवानाम् ॥ १५ ॥

Asankhyeya bhagadisu jivanam.

[The soul even in its lowest condition occupies innumerable pradeshas. This is not in conflict with the saying that (लोककसा) *Lokakasa* has innumerable pradeshas, because innumerable may apply to a large number and to a still larger and larger number, So if the Universe (*Lokakasa*) is divided into innumerable parts, each part also has got innumerable pradeshas.] (The place) of souls (is) in one or more of (these) innumerable parts.

Souls have five (सूक्ष्म *sukhma*) or dense (बद्ध *badara*) bodies. Fine bodies can pass through dense bodies. And the space occupied by one dense-bodied soul, gives place to an infinite number of fine-bodied souls.

SUTRA 16

प्रदेगसंहार विसर्पाभ्यां प्रदीपवत् ॥ १६ ॥

Pradesha samhara visarpabhyam pradipavat

By the contraction and expansion of the pradeshas (the soul, although it always has innumerable pradeshas, occupies space) like the light from a lamp. (e, g., a soul can occupy the space represented by an ant or an elephant or even the महासङ्क *Mahamachchha* found in the स्वयम्भूरम् *Svayambhuramana*, the outermost ocean of our Universe and of which the length is 1000 yojanas. This is the biggest body in existence. The smallest is that of a fine nigoda soul which is अपर्याप्ता, i. e. incapable of full development. The souls that occupy body die and reborn 18 times in the time - taken by one beat of the average human pulse. Thus it is like a lamp which lights a small room and also a larger one. Light vibrations expand more in the larger than in the small room).

SUTRA 17

गतिस्थित्युपग्रहौ धर्माधर्मयोरुपकारः ॥ १७ ॥

Gati sthityupagrahau dharmadharmayorupakarah.

Supporting the motion and rest (of soul and matter, is) the function of Dharma and Adharma respectively.

SUTRA 18

अकाशस्यावगाहः ॥ १८ ॥

Akashasyavagahah.

(The function) of Space (Akasa, is to give) place (to all the other substances).

SUTRA 19

शरीरवाङ्मनः प्राणपानाः पुद्गलानाम् ॥ १९ ॥

Sharira vanmanah pranapanah Pudgalanam.

(The function) of matter (is to form the basis of the) bodies, speech and mind and respiration of souls.

There are 23 kinds of molecules or varganah. The 5 bodies are made of 3, and speech and mind each of one, kinds. See Jiva Kanda 606-7.

SUTRA 20

सुखदुःखजीवितमरणोपग्रहाश्च ॥ २० ॥

Sukha dukkha jivita maranopagrahascha.

(The function of matter is) also to make possible in the soul worldly enjoyment, pain, life (and) death. [This must be so, as all karmas are material.] Matter also affects matter. Therefore उपग्रह Upagraha, is used in the Sutra.

SUTRA 21

परस्परौपग्रहो जीवानाम् ॥ २१ ॥

Parasparopagraho jivanam.

(The function) of souls, (i.e., mundane souls it to) support each other.

This is obvious. We all depend upon one another. The peasant provides corn to humanity ; the weaver clothes ; and so on.

SUTRA 22.

वर्तनापरिणामक्रियाः परत्वापरत्वे च कालस्य ॥ २२ ॥

Vartanaparinihamakriyah paratvaparatve cha kalasya.

And (the function) of Time (is to help substances in their) being

(in their continuing to exist, i.e., in the continuous change in their attributes at every moment) (in their) modifying, (in their) movement, (and in their) long and short duration.

The being or continuing to exist is done by निश्चयकाल *Nischaya-kala*, i.e., real time substance.

The other three functions are the basis of व्यवहारकाल *Vyavahara-kala*, i.e., of time, from a practical point of view which is based upon the motion of matter sun, moon, earth, etc., in space.

SUTRA 23

स्पर्शरसगन्धवर्णवन्तः पुद्गलाः ॥ २३ ॥

Sparsharasagandhavarnavantah pudgalah.

Material (substances) are possessed of touch, taste, smell and colour—matter is in the form of an atom (*Anu*), or a molecule (*Skandha*). Touch, taste, smell and colour are respectively of 8, 5, 2, and 5 kinds. An atom has only 5 of these 20 at a time, i.e., one each of taste, smell and colour and 2 of touch, hot or cold and smooth or rough. A molecule has 7; one each of taste, smell and colour, and 4 of touch, hot or cold, smooth or rough, hard or soft, and heavy or light.

SUTRA 24

शब्दबन्धसौक्ष्म्यं स्थौल्यसंस्थानमेदतमश्छायातपोद्योतवन्तश्च ॥ २४ ॥

Shabdabandhasauksmyasthaulyasamethanabhedatamashch-hayatapodyotavantashcha.

And they (material substances) are possessed of, (i.e., their manifestations take the form of :)

शब्द, *Shabda*, sound, like vocal sounds, music, etc.

Note :—Sound is produced by one group of molecules striking against another group as a hand striking the stretched skin on a kettle drum, this is the external cause of sound, but the sound affects the vocal molecules which fill the whole universe, they are set in motion and bring the sounds to our sense of hearing, it is the internal cause.

Sound is of two kinds :

- (1) वैश्वेशिका *Vaisreshika*—produced by nature alone as thunder, roar of ocean, thunder of clouds, etc.

(2) प्रायोगिक *Prayogika*—produced in connection with men, etc.
Sound is also divided into two—

(1) अभाषात्मक *Abhasatmaka*—unspoken, or which is not uttered by mouth. This is—

(1) प्रायोगिक *Prayogika*—caused by men, etc.

as (1) तत *Tata*—sounds from stringed instruments as vīṇa, etc.

(2) वितत *Vitata*—sounds from drum, kettle-drum, etc.

(3) घन *Ghana*—Sound from cymbals, kartala, etc.

(4) सुषिर *Susira*—sound from flute, etc.

and (5) वैशेषिक *Vaishesika*—caused by nature spontaneously as thunder, etc.

(2) भाषात्मक *Bhasatmaka*—spoken or speech uttered with the mouth, speech.

It is of two kinds :

1. अक्षररूपक *Anaksaratmaka*—non-alphabetical or the speech of animals having 2 or more senses,

2. अक्षरात्मक *Aksaratmaka*—alphabetical as Sanskrit, prakṛita and various other Aryan or non-aryan languages.

Note :—For further details vide *Dravya Samgraha* Vol I of S. B. J. Appendix page lviii.

बन्ध, *Bandha*, union caused by man or otherwise ; like chemical changes in clouds, electricity, etc.

सौक्ष्म्य, *Saukṣmya*, fineness ; like light compared with a table ;

स्थौल्य, *Sthāulya*, grossness, e. g., iron or wood compared with water ;

संस्थान, *Sansthana*, figure ; geometrical and other diagrams ;

भेद, *Bheda*, partibility ; like split peas flour or gold leaf from gold, etc.

तम, *Tama*, darkness ;

छाया, *Chhaya*, shade ;

आलस्य, *Atapa*, sun-shine ; and

उद्योत, *Udyota*, moon light.

SUTRA 25

अणवः स्कन्धाश्च ॥ २५ ॥

Anava skandhaśca.

(Matter has 2 chief forms :) atom and molecule.

SUTRA 26

भेदसंघातेभ्य उत्पद्यन्ते ॥ २६ ॥

Bhedasanghatebhya utpadyante.

(Molecules) are formed (in 3 ways :)

- (1) By division, (as a penny cut into its smallest possible pieces. Each piece will retain the composition of the matter of the penny.)
- (2) By fusion, (as a drop of water, from 2 parts of hydrogen and one of oxygen.
- (3) By both, (i. e., a mixed process of division and fusion, as in cooking.)

SUTRA 27

भेदादणुः ॥ २७ ॥

Bhedadanuh.

Atom (is obtained only) by division (to an infinite extent.)

SUTRA 28

भेदसंघाताभ्यां चाणुषः ॥ २८ ॥

Bhedasanghatabhyam chaksusah.

(Molecules can sometimes be decomposed) into (their) visible parts by division and union, e. g., marsh gas treated with chlorine gives methyl chloride and hydrochloric acid. The formula is :

$\text{CH}_4 + \text{Cl}_2 = \text{CH}_3\text{Cl} + \text{H} + \text{Cl}$. [P. 27 of Organic Chemistry People's Books.]

SUTRA 29

सद्द्रव्यलक्षणम् ॥ २९ ॥

Saddravyalakṣaṇam.

The differentia of substance (is) sat, being or isness.

SUTRA 30

उत्पादव्ययप्रतीयव्ययसत् ॥ ३० ॥

Utpadavyayadhravyayuktam sat.

Sat (is a) simultaneous possession.

- (of) उत्पाद, *Utpada*, coming into existence, birth ;
 व्यय, *Vyaya*, going out of existence, decay ; and
 ध्रौव्य, *Dhruvya*, continuous sameness of existence, permanence.

The meaning is that the substance remains the same, but its condition always changes, e.g., a man is in anger and forgiveness supervenes, his angry soul is replaced by a forgiving one, i. e., the forgiving condition comes into existence at the same time as anger goes out of existence ; and all through the soul continues the same. उत्पाद *Utpada* and व्यय *Vyaya* are of 2 kinds :

स्वनिमित्त *Svanimitta*, in the pure substance itself due to modification in the attribute of individuality, अगुरुलघुत्वं *Agurulaghutva*, on account of the substance Time ; and परनिमित्त *Paranimitta*, modification in the impure substance with the auxiliary help of another substance, e.g., in धर्म *Dharma* and अधर्म *Adharma*, आकाश *Akasha* and काल *Kala*, which have only स्वनिमित्त *Svanimitta*, kind of *Utpada* and *Vyaya*. The maturity of karmas is the paranimitta (by the shedding of some karmic matter) of a change in the thought-activity of the soul.

SUTRA 31

तद्भावव्ययं नित्यम् ॥ ३१ ॥

Tadbhavavyayam nityam.

'Permanence' (means) indestructibility of the essence (or quality) of the substance.

SUTRA 32

अर्पितानर्पितसिद्धेः ॥ ३२ ॥

Arpitanarpitāsiddheh.

The determination (of substances is done by) giving prominence (to their indestructible essence and giving a) secondary place (to their changeable condition as it is necessary for their full consideration, because the permanent and the changeable aspect, though existing simultaneously, cannot be described simultaneously).

Similarly in other pairs of contradictory characteristics, one must receive primary and the other secondary consideration.

SUTRA 33

स्निग्धरुक्षत्वाद्वन्द्वः ॥ ३३ ॥

Snigdharukṣatvadvandhab.

(The atoms of matter) unite (or become one to form a molecule,) in virtue of their qualities of smoothness and roughness. Smooth can unite with smooth, rough with rough, or smooth and rough with each other.

SUTRA 34

न जघन्यगुणानाम् ॥ ३४ ॥

Na jaghanyagunanam.

(There is) no (union of atoms) with an atom with the minimum degree (of smoothness or roughness to form a molecule.)

SUTRA 35

गुणसाम्ये सदृशानाम् ॥ ३५ ॥

Gunasamyē sadr̥śānam.

(Atoms) with equal degree (of smoothness or roughness) of the (condition, i. e., smoothness or roughness, cannot unite with an atom of their own or of the opposite condition.)

SUTRA 36

द्व्यधिकदिगुणानां तु ॥ ३६ ॥

Dvyadhikadi gunanam tu.

But (atoms) of 2 or more degrees can unite.)

An atom will unite when there is a difference of 2 degrees of smoothness or roughness between it, and the atom with which it can unite. Thus an atom with 2 degrees can unite with an atom with 4 degrees of smoothness or roughness, but neither less nor more. Thus it cannot unite with an atom with 3 or 5 or more degrees; of course, it cannot unite with an atom with 2 degrees or are degree under Sutras 35 and 34 respectively.

SUTRA 37

बन्धेऽधिकी परिरक्षणमिकी च ॥ ३७ ॥

Bandhesādṛhikā parirakṣaṇamīkā cha.

In the union (the atom) with a higher degree (of smoothness or roughness) absorbs (the one with the lower degree into itself.)

SUTRA 38

गुणपर्ययवद्रव्यम् ॥ ३८ ॥

Gunaparyaya-vadravyam.

Substance is possessed of attributes and modifications.

गुण, Attributes, are अव्ययी Anvayi, i.e., they co-exist with substance.

पर्याय, Modifications are व्यतिरेकी Vyatireki, i.e., they succeed each other.

SUTRA 39

कालश्च ॥ ३९ ॥

Kalaścha.

Kala or Time (is) also (a substance).

SUTRA 40

सोजन्तसमयः ॥ ४० ॥

So nuntasamayah.

That (Time has) infinite Samayas, Samaya is the modification of time. असमय Samaya is the time taken by the smallest particle of matter in going from one point of time to the next point called कालानु Kalanu.

SUTRA 41

द्रव्याश्रया निर्गुणा गुणाः ॥ ४१ ॥

Drvyasraya nirguna gunah.

(Gunas or) attributes depend upon substance, (and are never without it. An attribute as such) cannot be the substratum of another attribute, (although, of course, many attributes can co-exist in one and the same substance at one and the same time and place.) There cannot be an attribute of an attribute.

SUTRA 42

तद्भावः परिणामः ॥ ४२ ॥

Tadbhavaḥ parinamah.

The becoming of that (is) modification. परिणाम Parinama or modification of a substance is the change in the character of its attributes.

अध्याय षष्ठः

CHAPTER VI

SUTRA 1

कायवाङ्मनः कर्म योगः ॥ १ ॥

Kayavau nanahkarma yogah.

Yoga (is the name of vibrations set in the soul by) the activity of body, speech or mind.

योग, *Yoga* is the name of a faculty of the soul itself, to attract matter, under the influence of past karmas. The activity of mind, body and speech brings this faculty into play.

काययोग, *Kaya-yoga* is caused by the क्षयोपशम *Ksayopshama*, destruction-subsidence of वैर्यान्तराय *Viryantaraya*, power-obstructive karmas, and by the support of material molecules of the different kinds of bodies.

वचनयोग, *Vachana yoga*, is caused by the operation of the body-karma and by the destruction-subsidence of power-obstructive and knowledge-obscuring-karmas, and by the support of vocal molecules.

मनयोग, *Manayoga* is caused by the destruction-subsidence of knowledge-obscuring and obstructive karmas, and by the support of the molecules, which go to form mind.

SUTRA 2

स आसृवः ॥ २ ॥

Sa asravah

This (yoga) is the channel of Asrava (or i armic matter into the soul.)

SUTRA 3

शुभः पुण्यस्याशुभः पापस्य ॥ ३ ॥

Subhah punyasyashubhah papasya.

Asrava is of 2 kinds :) शुभ *Shubha* or good (which is the inlet) of virtue or meritorious karmas, अशुभ *Ashubha* or bad (which is the inlet of vice or demeritorious karmas).

SUTRA 4

सकषायोकषाययोः साम्परायिकेर्वापथयोः ॥ ४ ॥

Sakasayakasayayoh samparayikeryapathayoh.

(Souls) affected with the passions (have) साम्परायिक *Samparayika* or mundane (inflow, i.e., inflow of karmic matter which causes the cycle of births and rebirths. Those) without the passions (have) ईवोपथ, *Iryapatha*, transient or fleeting (inflow). Mundane inflow is in the first ten, and transient inflow in the 11th, 12th and 13th stages (Gunasthana). There is no inflow in the 14th stage.

SUTRA 5

इन्द्रियकषायान्नतक्रियाः पञ्चचतुःपञ्चपञ्चविंशतिसंख्याः पूर्वस्य भेदा ॥ ५ ॥

**Indriyakasayavratakriyah panchachatuhpanchpanchvinsatis-
ankhyahpurvasya bhedah**

The kinds of the first, (i.e., mundane inflow are 39 in) number:

(5 Caused by the activity of the) 5 Senses इन्द्रिय ,

(4 " " " ") 4 Passions कषाय ;

(5 " " " ") 5 (Kinds of) vowlessness व्रत ;

(25 " " ") 25 (kinds of) activity क्रिया (as follows):

- (1) सत्यत्वक्रिया, *Samyaktva-kriya*, that which strengthens right belief, e.g., worship, etc.,
- (2) मिथ्यात्वक्रिया, *Mithyatva-kriya*, that which strengthens wrong belief, e.g., superstition, etc.,
- (3) प्रयोगक्रिया, *Prayoga-kriya*, bodily movement ;
- (4) समादानक्रिया, *Samadana-kriya*, tendency to neglect vows, after having taken them.
- (5) ईवोपथक्रिया, *Iryapatha-kriya*, walking carefully by looking on the ground (for living beings which may be trod upon and thus injured)
- (6) प्रादोषिकीक्रिया, *Pradosiki-kriya*, tendency to accuse others in anger ;
- (7) कायिकीक्रिया, *Kayiki-kriya*, a wicked man's readiness to hurt others ;
- (8) अशुकरिक्कीक्रिया, *Adhukaraniki-kriya*, having weapons of hurtfulness ;

- (9) परितापिकीक्रिया, Paritapiki-kriya, any thing which may cause mental pain to oneself or others ;
- (10) प्राणातिपातिकीक्रिया, Pranatipatiki-kriya, depriving another of vitalities of age, sense-organs, powers and respiration ;
- (11) दर्शनक्रिया, Darshana-kriya, infatuated desire to see a pleasing form ;
- (12) स्पर्शनक्रिया, Sparshana-kriya, frivolous-indulgence in touching
- (13) प्रात्ययिकीक्रिया, Pratyayiki-kriya, inventing new sense-enjoyments ;
- (14) समन्तापातनक्रिया, Samantapatana-kriya, answering call of nature in a place frequented by men, women, and animals ;
- (15) अनाभोगीक्रिया, Anabhoga-kriya, indifference in dropping things or throwing oneself down upon the earth, i.e., without seeing whether it is swept or not
- (16) स्वहस्तक्रिया, Svahasta-kriya, undertaking to do by one's own hand, what should be done by others ;
- (17) निस्सर्गक्रिया, Nisarga-kriya, admiration of hurtful or unrighteous things ;
- (18) विदारणक्रिया, Vidarana-kriya, proclaiming other's sins ;
- (19) आज्ञाव्यापादिकीक्रिया, Ajna-vyapadiki-kriya, misinterpreting the scriptural injunctions, which we do not want to follow ;
- (20) अनाकंक्ष क्रिया, Anakanks-kriya, disrespect to scriptural injunctions out of vice or laziness ;
- (21) प्रारम्भक्रिया, Prarambha-kriya, engaging in harmful activities or expressing delight in other's misdeeds ;
- (22) परिग्राहिकी क्रिया, Parigrahiki-kriya, trying to persevere in one's attachment to worldly belongings ;
- (23) मायाक्रिया, Maya-kriya, deceitful disturbance of some one's right knowledge and faith ;
- (24) मिथ्यदर्शनक्रिया, Mithya-darshan-kriya, praising actions due to wrong belief ; and
- (25) अप्रत्याख्यानक्रिया, Apratyakhyaṇa-kriya, not renouncing what ought to be renounced.

Note that the Senses, Passions and Vowlessness are the causes and the 25 kinds of activity are their effects.



SUTRA 6

तीव्रमन्दज्ञाताज्ञातभावाधिकरणवीर्यविशेषेभ्यस्तद्विशेषः ॥ ६ ॥

Tivramandajñatājñatabhavadhikaranaviryavishesebhyastadvishesah.

The differences in inflow (in different souls caused by the same activity arise) from differences in (the following :))

- (1) तीव्रभाव, Intensity of desire or thought-activity.
- (2) मन्दभाव, Mildness.
- (3) ज्ञातभाव, Intentional character (of the act.)
- (4) अज्ञातभाव, Unintentional character (of the act.)
- (5) अधिकरण, Dependence.
- (6) वीर्य, (one's own position and) power (to do the act.)

SUTRA 7

अधिकरणं जीवाऽजीवाः ॥ ७ ॥

Adhikaranam jīvaajīvah.

The "Dependence" (relates to) the souls (and) the non-souls.

SUTRA 8

आद्यं संरम्भसमारम्भयोगकृतकारितानुमतकषायविशेषै-

स्त्रिस्त्रिस्त्रिश्चतुश्चैकशः ॥ ८ ॥

**Adyam samrambhasamarambhayogakritakaritanumatakasaya
vishesastristriśchātushchāikashah.**

The first जीवाधिकरण, (i. e., dependence on the souls is of 108) kinds (due to) differences (in the following :))

1. संरम्भ, *Samrambha*, Determination (to do a thing.)
2. समारम्भ, *Samarambha*, Preparation (for it), i. e., collecting materials for it.
3. आरम्भ, *Arambha*, commencement (of it.)

(These) three (can be done by the) (three *ज्ञेय* yogas, (i. e., activity of mind, body and speech, thus there are $3 \times 3 = 9$ kinds. Each one of the 9 kinds can be done in) three (ways, i. e.,) by doing oneself, or having it done by others, or by approval or acquiescence. (Thus we get 27 kinds. Each one of the 27 may be due to) the 4 Passions. (That gives us $27 \times 4 = 108$ kinds. Thus the Jain rosary has 108 beads one for each of these 108 Jivadhikaranas.

These 108 kinds can become of 432 kinds, if we consider each Passion in its 4 aspects of अनशुद्धा Error-feeding, अप्रत्याख्यान Partial-vow-preventing, प्रत्याख्यान Total-vow-preventing and संजलन Perfect-right conduct-preventing.)

SUTRA 9

निर्वर्तनानिक्षेपसंयोगनिसर्गा द्विचतुर्द्वित्रिभेदाः परम् ॥ ९ ॥

Nirvartananiksepasamyoganisarga dvichaturdvitribhedah param.

The other अजीवाधिकरण, (i. e. Dependence on the non-soul is of the following 11 kinds :)

- 2 (kinds of) निर्वर्तना, Production [(1) मूलगुण Mulaguna, of the body, speech, mind and respiration, (2) उत्तरगुण Uttaraguna, of books, pictures, statues, etc.]
- 4 (kinds of) निक्षेप, Putting down [a thing (1) अप्रत्य वेक्षित Apratya veksita, without seeing, (2) दुःप्रमृष्ट Duhpramrista, petulantly, peevishly, (3) सहसा Sahasa, hurriedly and (4) अनामोह Ana-bhogā, where it ought not to be put.]
- 2 (kinds of) संयोग mixing up [(1) भक्षयान Bhakta-pana food and drink, (2) उपकरण Upkarana, mixing up of things necessary for doing any act.]
- 3 (kinds of) निसर्ग, movement [by (1) काय Kaya body, (2) वाक् Vanga speech, and (3) मन Mana mind.]

11 Total.

SUTRA 10

तत्प्रदोषनिहवमात्सर्यान्तरायासादनोपघाता ज्ञानदर्शनावरणयोः

Tatpradosa nihava matsaryantarayasadanopaghata jñana-darshanavarayanayoh.

- (1) प्रदोष, Depreciation of the learned (scriptures.)
- (2) निहव, Concealment of knowledge.
- (3) मात्सर्य, Envy, jealousy. Refusal to impart knowledge out of envy.
- (4) अन्तराय, Obstruction. Hindering the progress of knowledge.
- (5) आसादना, Denying the truth proclaimed by another, by body and speech.
- (6) उपघात, Refuting the truth, although it is known to be such.

SUTRA 11

दुःखशोकतापाक्रन्दनबधपरिवेदनान्यात्मपरोमयस्थान्यसद्वदस्य ॥ ११ ॥

Dukkhashokatapakrandanabadhaparivedananyatmaparokha-yasthanyasadvedyasya.

(The inflow) of pain bringing-feeling (असतावेदनीय *Asata-vedaniya*) karmic matter (is due to the following:)

(1) दुःख *Dukkha*, pain. (2) शोक *shoka*, sorrow. (3) ताप *tapa*, repentance, remorse. (4) आक्रन्दन *Akrandana*, weeping. (5) बध *badha*, depriving of vitality. (6) परिवेदना *parivedna*, piteous or pathetic moaning to attract compassion.

(These 6 can be produced) in ones own self, in another, or both (in one self and another. Thus there are 18 forms of this inflow.

SUTRA 12

भूतव्रत्यनुकम्पादानसदामसंममादियोगः क्षन्तिःशौचमिति सद्वदस्य ॥ १२ ॥

Bhutanvratyanu-kampadanasaragasamyamadipogeh ksanti shauchamiti sadvedyasya.

(1) भूतानुकम्पा *Bhutanukampa*, compassion for all living beings, (2) व्रत्यनुकम्पा *vratyanukampa*, compassion for the vowers, (3) दान *Dana*, charity, (4) समगसंयम *saraga-samyama* self-control with slight attachment, etc., [i. e., (5) संयमसंयम *samyamasamyama*, restrain by vows of some, but not of other passions, (6) अकामनिर्जरा *Akama-nirjara*, equanimous submission to the fruition of karma, (7) बालतप *Balatapa*, austerities not based upon right knowledge] (8) योग *Yoga*, contemplation, (9) क्षान्ति *Ksanti*, forgiveness, and (10) शौच *Shaucha*, contentment—these (are the cause of inflow) of pleasure-bearing feeling karmic matter, (सतावेदनीय, *Sata-vedaniya*).

SUTRA 13

केवलेश्वरसंग्रहमदेवार्णवादो दर्शनमोहस्य ॥ १३ ॥

Kevalishrutasanghadharmadevavarnavadodarshanamohasya.

(The inflow) of right-belief-deluding karmic matter (is caused by) अवर्णवाद *avarnavada*, defaming the Omniscient Lord अर्हत *Arhat*, (i. e., केवलि) *Kevali*, the Scriptures (अ त) *Shruta*, the Saint's brother-hoods, (संग्रह) *Sangha*, the true religion, (धर्म)

Dharma, and the Celestial beings, (देव : *devah*), e. g. saying that the celestial beings take meat or wine, etc. and to offer these as sacrifices to them.

SURTA 14

कषायोदयात्तीव्रपरिणामश्चारित्रमोहस्य ॥ १४ ॥

Kasayodayattivraparinamashcharitramohasya.

(The inflow) of चरित्र मोहनीय right-conduct-deluding karmic matter (is caused by the) intense thought-activity produced by the rise of the passions (and of the quasi-passions no-kasaya).

e. g. Joking about Truth, etc., disinclination to take vows, etc. indulging in evil society, etc.

SUTRA 15

बह्वारम्भपरिग्रहत्वं नारकस्यायुषः ॥ १५ ॥

Bahvarambhaparigrahatvam narakasyayusah.

(As to the age-karma) the inflow of नारकायुक्त्वं *narakayukarma*, hellishage karma (is caused by too) much wordly activity and by attachment to (too) many worldly objects or by (too) much attachment.

e. g., committing breaches of the first five vows of non-killing, truth non-stealing, chastity, non-attachment to worldly possessions.

SUTRA 16

माया तैर्यग्योनस्य ॥ १६ ॥

Maya tairyagyonasya,

(The inflow) of तैर्यग्योनि *tiryagyoni*, sub-human-age-karma (is caused by) माया *Maya*, deceit,

e. g. cheating others, preaching the false doctrine, etc.

SUTRA 17

अल्पारम्भपरिग्रहत्वं मानुषस्य ॥ १७ ॥

(The inflow) of मानुषायु *manusyayu* human-age-karma (is caused by) slight worldly activity and by attachment to a few worldly objects or by slight attachment.

SUTRA 18

स्वभावमार्दव च ॥ १८ ॥

Svabhava mardavacha.

Natural humble disposition is also the cause of human-age karma
(मनुष्यायुज्जन्म).

SUTRA 19

निःशीलव्रतत्वं च सर्वेषाम् ॥ १९ ॥

Nihshilvratatvam cha Sarvesam

Vowlessness and sub vowlessness with (slight worldly activity and slight attachment), (is cause of inflow) of all (kinds of age-karmas).

Not taking the vows of laymen and not adopting the restrictions (शील *shila*), but having slight attachment to the world and activity in it, can be the cause of the inflow of age-karmic matter of all four kinds.

SUTRA 20

सरागसंयमसंयमासयमाकामनिर्जराबालतपसिदैवस्य ॥ २० ॥

Saragasamsamasyama-samyamakamanirjarabalatapamsi
daivasya.

(The inflow) of देवस्य celestial-age-karma (is caused by:)

(1) सरागसंयम *Saraga-samyama*, self-control with slight attachment [found in monks only].

संयमसंयमा *Samyamasamyama*, restraint of vows of some, but not of other passions, [found in laymen only.]

अकामनिर्जरा *Akama-nirjara*, equanimous submission to the fruition of karma.

(4) बालतप *Balatapu* austerities not based upon right knowledge.

SUTRA 21

सम्यक्त्व च ॥ २१ ॥

Samyaktvam cha

Right-belief (is) also (the cause of celestial-age-karmas, but only of the heavenly order. It applies to human and sub-human only. A celestial or hellish right-believer binds the human age-karma. Note also that if a human or sub-human beings has bound a particular

age-karma before gaining right belief, he must enjoy that. See also Jiva Kanda, 292, 527, 645. Karma Kanda 158.

SUTRA 22

योगवक्रता विसंवादनं चाशुभस्य नाम्नः ॥ २२ ॥

Yogavakrata visamvadanam chasubhasya namnah.

(The inflow) of अशुभनाम *Ashubhanama*, bad body-making karma (is caused by a) non-straight forward (or deceitful working) of the mind, body or speech (or) by (विसंवाद *Visamvada*.) wrangling, etc, Wrong-belief, Envy, Back-biting. Self-praise, Censuring and others, etc.)

SUTRA 23

तद्विपरीतं शुभस्य ॥ २३ ॥

Tadviparitam shubhasya.

(The inflow) of शुभनाम good-body-making karma (is caused by the causes) opposite of the above, (viz, by straight-forward dealings with body, mind and speech; by avoiding disputes, etc. right-belief, humility, admiring praise worthy people, etc)

SUTRA 24

दर्शनविशुद्धिं विनयसम्पन्नता शीलव्रतेष्वनतीचारोऽभीक्ष्णज्ञानोपयोग-
स्वेनैव शक्तितस्त्यागतपसी साधुसमाधिर्वैयावृत्यकरणमर्हदाचार्यबहुश्रुतप्रवचन-
भक्तिरावश्यकापरिहारिमर्गिप्रभावनाप्रवचनयत्सलत्वमिति तीर्थकरत्वस्य ॥ २४ ॥

**Darshanavishuddhirvinayasampannata shilavratasvanati-
charoabhiksananjnanopayogasamvegau shaktitastyagatapasi sad-
husamadhirvaiyavrityakaranamarhadacharyabahushrutapra-
chanabhaktiravashyakaparihanirmargaprabhayanapravachan-
avatsalatva-miti tirthamkaratvasya.**

(The inflow) of तीर्थकरत्वे *Tirthamkara*, body making karma [is caused by meditation (भावना *Bhavana*) of the following 16 matters :]

1. दर्शनं विशुद्धिं *Darshana-vishuddhi*, Purity of right-belief.

Pure right belief is with 8 Angas or the following 8 qualities :—

1. निश्चिन्तित *Nishchankita*. Free from all doubt.
2. निष्कामित *Nishkamita*. Free from worldly desire,

3. निर्विचिकित्सित *Nirvichikitsita*. Free from repulsion from anything.
4. अमृदुदृष्टि *Amudhadristi*. Free from superstitious belief.
5. उपब्रुह्मं *Upabrihanam* or (more popularly), उपगूहन *Upaguhana*. Free from a tendency to proclaim the faults of others.
6. स्थितिकरण *Shitikarana*. To help oneself or others to remain steady in the path of truth.
7. वात्सल्य *Vatsalya*. Tender affection for one's brothers on the path of Liberation.
8. प्रभावना *Prabhavana*. Propagation of the path of Liberation.
2. विनयसम्पन्नता *Vinaya-sampannata*. Reverence for means of Liberation and for those who follow them.
3. शीलव्रतेस्वनतिचार *Shilvratasvanatichara*. Faultless observance of the 5 vows, and a faultless subdual of the passions.
4. अभिक्ख्यानोपयोग *Abhiksana-ghanopayoga*, Ceaseless pursuit of right knowledge.
5. संवेग *Samvega*. Perpetual apprehension of mundane miseries.
6. शक्तिस्तयाग *Shaktitastyaga*. Giving up (for others of knowledge etc.) according to one's capacity.
7. शक्तितप्तापः *Shaktitastapah*. The practice of austerities, according to one's capacity.
8. साधुसमाधिः *Sadhu-samadhi*. Protecting and reassuring the saints or removing their troubles.
9. वैयावृत्त्यकरण *Vaiyavrittya karana*. Serving the meritorious.
10. अर्हद्भक्ति *Arhadbhakti*. Devotion to Arhats or Omniscient Lords
11. आचार्यभक्ति *Acharyabhakti*. Devotion to Acharyas or Heads of the orders of saints.
12. बहुश्रुतभक्ति *Bahusrutabhakti*. Devotion to Upadhyayas (उपाध्याय) or teaching saints
13. प्रवचनभक्ति *Pravachanabhakti*. Devotion to Scriptures.
14. आवश्यकापरिहरण *Avashyakapariham*. Not neglecting one's (6 important daily) duties.
15. मार्गप्रभावना *Margaprabhavana*. Propagation of the path of Liberation.
16. प्रवचनवात्सल्य *Pravachana-vatsalatva*. Tender affection for one's brothers the path of liberation.

Even one of these if properly contemplated and with right belief brings about the inflow of Tirthakara-body-making karma.

SUTRA 25

परात्मनिन्दाप्रशंसौ सदसद्गुणोच्छादनोद्भावने च नीचैर्गोत्रस्य ॥ २५ ॥

Paratmanindeprashamsa sadasadgunochchhadanodbhavane cha nicheirgotrasya.

(The inflow) of नीचोत्र low-family-determining karma (is caused by :)

1. परनिन्दा *Paraninda*, speaking ill of others ;
2. आत्मप्रशंसा *Atmaprashansa*, praising oneself ;
3. सदगुणोच्छादन *Sadgunochchhadan*, concealing the good qualities of others ; and
4. असद्गुणोद्भावन *Asadgunodbhavan*, proclaiming in oneself the good qualities which one does not possess.

SUTRA 26

तद्विपर्ययो नीचैर्वृत्यनुत्सेकौ चोत्तरस्य ॥ २६ ॥

Tadviparyayo nichairvrityanutsekau chottarasya.

(The inflow) of the next, (i. e. उच्चोत्र high-family-determining karma is caused by) the opposite of the above, (i. e. by :)

1. परप्रशंसा *Paraprashmsha*, praising others ;
2. आत्मनिन्दा *Atmaninda*, denouncing one's self ;
3. सदगुणोद्भावन *Sadgunodbhavana*, proclaiming the good qualities of others ;
4. असद्गुणोच्छादन *Asadgunochchhadana*, not proclaiming one's own ;
5. नीचैर्वृत्ति *Nichairvritti*, an attitude of humility towards one's better ;
6. अनुत्सेक *Anutseka*, not being proud of one's own achievements or attainments.

SUTRA 27

विघ्नकराणामन्तरायस्य ॥ २७ ॥

Vighnakaranamantrayasya.

(The inflow) of obstructive (अन्तराय *Antaraya*) karma (is caused by) disturbing others (in दान charity, लाभ gain, भोग enjoyment of consumable things, उपभोग enjoyment of non-consumable things, and शक्ति making use of their powers).

NOTE—The inflow of 7 karmas, i.e. of all except the age-karma, is going on always, in souls influenced by the Passion, and of the age-karma also on special occasions. But the predominance of the above causes will determine the intensity of fruition (Anubhaga) of their particular inflow.

The special occasions of age-karma are 8 in one man's life, as follows: Supposing a man's life is to be 81 years' long. The first will be on his passing $\frac{1}{3}$ of it, i. e. when he is 54. The second on his passing $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remainder, i. e. when he is 72. The third on his passing $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remainder, i. e. when he is 78. Fourth on his passing $\frac{1}{3}$ of the remainder again, i. e. when he is 80. And similarly the fifth when he is 80 years, and 8 months. The sixth at 80 years, 10 months and 20 days. The seventh at 80 years, 11 months, 16 days and 16 hours. The eighth at 80 years, 11 months, 25 days, 13 hours and 20 minutes. If not then the ninth is the last moment.



अध्याय सातवां

CHAPTER VII

SUTRA 1

हिंसाऽनृतस्तेयाब्रह्मपरिग्रहेभ्यो विरतिर्व्रतम् ॥ १ ॥

Himsaanritasteyabrahmaparigrahebhyo viratirvratam.

नत *Vrata* or vow is to be free from :

- (1) हिंसा *Himsa*, injury ;
- (2) अनृत *Anrita*, falsehood ;
- (3) स्तेय *Steya*, theft ;
- (4) ब्रह्म *Abrahma*, unchastity ; and
- (5) परिग्रह *Parigraha*, worldly attachment ; (or worldly objects).

SUTRA 2

देशसर्वतोऽणुमहती ॥ २ ॥

Deshasarvatoanumahati.

(Vows are of 2 kinds :)

1. अणुव्रत, *Anuvrata*, partial vow (that is, limited abstention from the five faults given above) ;
0. महाव्रत *Mahavrata*, full vow, (i. e., total abstention.)

SUTRA 3

तत्सर्वंयथैव भावनः पञ्च, पञ्च ॥ ३ ॥

Tatatsairyartham bhavanah panch panch.

For the fixing of these (5 vows in the mind, these are) 5 (kinds of) meditation (अवना *bhavana*, for) each (of the vows.)

SUTRA 4

वाङ्मनोगुप्त्यादाननिक्षेपशसमित्यासाक्तपानमोहमांस पञ्च ॥ ४ ॥

Varṇanogupthyadananiṣeṣaśasamityāsaṁkṛtapaṇamohamāṁsa pancha.

The 5 (meditations for the vow against injury are :)

1. वगुप्ति *Vaggupti*, Preservation of speech ;
2. मनोगुप्ति *Manogupti*, Preservation of mind ;
3. ईर्ष्या *Irya*, Care in walking ;
4. आदान-निक्षेपण-समिति *Adana-niksepana-samiti*, Care in lifting and laying down things ;
5. आलोकितपान भोजन *Alokitapana-bhojan*, thoroughly seeing to one's food and drink.

SUTRA 5

क्रोधलोभमीदृश्वहास्यप्रत्याख्यानान्यनुवीचि माषणं च पञ्च ॥ ५ ॥

**Krodhalobhabhirutvahasyapratyakhyananyanvichi
bhasanam cha pancha.**

And five (meditations for the vow against falsehood :))

1. क्रोध प्रत्याख्यान, *Krodha-pratyakhyana*, Giving up anger ;
2. लोभ *Lobha*, " " " " greed ;
3. मीरुत *Bhirutva*, " " " " cowardice or fear
4. हास्य प्रत्याख्यान, *Hasya* " " " Giving up of frivolity ;
5. अनुवीची माषण, *Anuvichi-bhasana*. Speaking in accordance with scriptural injunctions.

SUTRA 6

शून्यागारविमोचितावासपरोपरोधाकरणमैश्वर्यसुद्धि सधर्मविनिर्वादाः पञ्च ॥ ६ ॥

Shunyagaravimochitavasaparoparodhakaranabhaiksyashuddhi sadharmaavisamvadah panch.

(For the vow against theft, the) five (meditations are :)

1. शून्यागार, *Shunyagara*, Residence in a solitary place, like a mountain cave, etc. ;
2. विमोचितावास, *Vimochitavasa*, Residence in a deserted place ;
3. परोपरोधाकरण, *Paroparodhakarana*, Residence in a place where one is not likely to be prohibited by others, nor where one should be likely to prohibit others ;
4. शैश्वर्यसुद्धि, *Bhaiksyasuddhi*, Purity of alms, according to the scriptures ;
5. सधर्मविनिर्वादा, *Saddharmavisamvada*, Not disputing with one's co-religionists, as to "mine" and "thine."

SUTRA 7

स्त्रीरागकथाश्रवस्तन्मनोहरांगनिरीक्षत्पूर्वतान् स्मरत्पुष्पेष्टरसस्वशीर-
संस्कारत्वात् पञ्च ॥ ७ ॥

**Striragakathashravanatanmanoharanganiriksanaapurvaratanu
smaranavrisyestarasasvasharirasamskaratyagaha pancha.**

For the vow against unchastity, the five (meditations are :)

1. स्त्रीरागकथामव्यक्तम् *Striraga-katha-shravanatyaga*, Renouncing of (reading or) hearing stories exciting attachment for women ;
2. तन्मनोहरांगनिरीक्षत्वात् *Tanmanoharanga-niriksana-tyaga*, Renouncing of seeing their beautiful bodies ,
3. पूर्वतनुस्मरत्वात् *Purvaratanusmarana-tyaga*, Renouncing of thinking over, (remembrance of) past enjoyment of women ,
4. पुष्पेष्टरसत्वात् *Vrisyestarasa-tyaga*, Renouncing of exciting and aphrodisiac drinks , and
5. स्वशीरसंस्कारत्वात् *Svasharirasamskara-tyaga*, Renouncing of beautifying one's own body , self-adornment.

SUTRA 8

मनोज्ञमनोज्ञेन्द्रियविषयरोगद्वेषवर्जनानि पञ्च ॥ ८ ॥

Manojnamanojnendriyavisayaragadvesavarjanani pancha.

(For the vow against worldly attachment, the 5 (meditations are :) giving up or self-denial of love and hatred (रोगद्वेष *Raga-dvesa*) in the pleasing (and) displeasing (worldly) objects of the (five) senses.

SUTRA 9

हिंसादिष्विहासुत्रापायानवष्टयनिष् ॥ ९ ॥

Himsadisviihamutrapayavadyadarshanam.

The destructive or dangerous (and) censurable (character of the 5 faults,) injury, etc., in this (as also) in the next world (ought to be) meditated upon.

SUTRA 10

दुःखमेव वा ॥ १० ॥

Duhkha-meva va

(One must also meditate, that the five faults, injury, etc. are pain personified, (as they themselves are the veritable womb of pain).

SUTRA 11

मैत्रीप्रमोदकरुणामध्यास्थानि च सत्त्वगुणधिक्रियमानाः क्षिप्रमेव ॥ ११ ॥

Maitripramodakarunyamadhyasthani cha sattvagunadhikakishyamanavinayesu.

And (we must meditate upon the 4 following :))

1. मैत्री Maitri, Benevolence (for) सत्त्वेषु Satvesu, all living beings,
2. प्रमोद, Pramoda, Delight (at the sight of beings) गुणानि केवु Gunadhikesu, better qualified (or more advanced than ourselves on the path of liberation,)
3. करुण Karunya, Pity, Compassion (for) क्षिप्रमेव Klishyamanesu, the afflicted,
4. माध्यस्थ Maddyastha, Tolernce or indifference (to those who are) अविनयेषु Avinayesu, uncivil or ill-behaved.

SUTRA 12

जगत्कायस्वभाव वा संवेगवैराग्यार्थम् ॥ १२ ॥

Jagatkayasvabha va uvasamvegavairagyartham.

For संवेग Samvega, the apprehension of the miseries of the world and वैराग्य Vairagya, non-attachment to sense pleasures, (we should meditate upon) the nature of the world and of our physical body. The world is transitory and not fit for love, and the body is impure and hampering in spiritual progress and therefore should be subordinated to the soul.

SUTRA 13

प्रमत्तयोगात्प्राणव्यपरोपणं हिंसा ॥ १३ ॥

Pramattayogatpranavyaparopenam himsa.

By (मत्तयोग), passional vibrations, (प्रमत्तयोग), the hurting of the vitalities, (is) (हिंसा) injury.

Injury on himsa is to hurt the *Pranas* or vitalities, through *Pramattayoga*, (i.e., vibration due to the Passions, which agitate mind, body or speech.

SUTRA 14

असद्विबुधसमुत्पन्नम् ॥ १४ ॥

Asadabhidhanamanritam.

Falsehood (is) to speak hurtful-words (through *Pramattayoga*, *passional vibrations*.)

SUTRA 15

अदत्तादानं स्तेयम् ॥ १५ ॥

Adattadanam steyam.

Theft (is) to take anything which is not given, (through *Pramattayoga*).

SUTRA 16

मैथुनमब्रह्म ॥ १६ ॥

Maithunamabrahma.

Unchastity is coition (or sexual contact, through *Pramattayoga*.)

SUTRA 17

मूर्च्छा परिग्रहा ॥ १७ ॥

Murchha parigraha.

Worldly attachment is *Murchha*, infatuation (or 'intoxication through *Pramattayoga*, in the living or non-living objects of the world.)

Worldly objects are said to be *Parigraha*, because they are the external causes of internal attachment.

SUTRA 18

निःशल्यो व्रती ॥ १८ ॥

Nihahalyo vrati.

A *Vrati*, or a vower should be without (blemish which is like a) thorn (शल्य *Shalya*, which makes the whole body restless.)

This शल्य *Shalya* or blemish is of 3 kinds :

1. मायाशल्य, *Maya-shalya*, the thorn of deceit.
2. मिथ्याशल्य, *Mithya-shalya*, the thorn of wrong-belief.
3. निदान, *Nidana*, the thorn of Desire for future sense-pleasures.

SUTRA 19

अगार्यं जगारश्च ॥ १९ ॥

Agaryaanagarshcha.

(Vowers are of 2 kinds :) अगारी *Agari*, house-holders (laymen) and जगार *Anagara*, house-less (ascetics.)

SUTRA 20

अनुव्रतोजगारी ॥ २० ॥

Anuvratoagari.

(One whose five) vows (are) partial (is) a house-holder.

The house-holder's life has 11 प्रतिमा *Pratimas* or stages :

1. दर्शनप्रतिमा, *Darshana-pratima*. A true Jain must have perfect and intelligent belief in Jainism. He must have a good knowledge of its doctrines and their applications. He must give up meat, wine and honey. He must have a belief free from defects. He must more or less observe the 5 vows.
2. व्रतप्रतिमा *Vrata pratima*. He must observe the 5 Anuvratas without defect, the 3 gunavratas, and 4 Siksavratas. To give details, he must not destroy life, must not tell a lie, must not make unpermitted use of another man's property, must be chaste and must limit his possessions for life (the 5 Anuvratas) he must make a perpetual and a daily vow to go in certain directions and to certain distances only, must avoid useless talk, act or thought of sinful things (the 3

Gunavratas), and he must limit the articles of his diet and enjoyment for the day, must worship at fixed times in morning, noon and evening, must keep fast on certain days, and must give charity in the way of knowledge, money, etc., every day (the 4 Shikhsavratas). He must try not to transgress the last seven vows also.

3. समयिक प्र०, *Samayika P.*, He must meditate faultlessly, regularly, and for fixed hours at mid-day, evening and morning, not less than 48 minutes every time.
4. प्रोषधोपवास प्र०, *Prosadhopavasa P.*, He must fast faultlessly on the 8th and 14th day of every lunar fortnight.
5. सच्चित्तत्याग प्र०, *Sachittatyaga P.*, He must not take Animate vegetable and water. He must follow this faultlessly.
6. रात्रि-भुक्त-त्याग प्र०, *Ratri-bhukta-tyaga P.*, He must not take or give food, or drink at night, this must be faultless.
7. ब्रह्मचर्य प्र०, *Brahma charyya P.*, He must give up sexual intercourse even with his wife. This must be faultless.
8. आरम्भत्याग प्र०, *Arambha-tyaga P.*, He must give up his means of livelihood, cooking, etc.
9. परिग्रहत्याग प्र०, *Parigraha-tyaga P.*, He must give up his desire for the objects of the world and be contented with abandoning all his property, except a few clothes and utensils.
10. अनुमतित्याग प्र०, *Anumata-tyaga, P.*, He must not even advise on any worldly activity.
11. उद्दिष्टत्याग प्र०, *Uddista-tyaga P.*, He will beg his food, and refuse what is specially prepared for him. He may be Ksullaka, with a small sheet and loin-cloth, or an Ailaka, with only a loin-cloth, and dining only off his hands. They both carry a pot of water, and a peacock brush. The former carries an alms bowl also.

SUTRA 21

दिग्देशानर्थदण्डविरतिसामयिकप्रोषधोपवासोपभोग परिभोगपरिमाणा
तिथिसंविभागव्रतसम्पन्नदण्ड ॥ २१ ॥

Digdeshanarthadandaviratisamayikaprosadhopavasopabhogaparibhogaparimanatithisamviblagavratasampannash cha.

(The house-holder) must be with (the following 7 supplementary-vows) also:

1. दिग्भक्त *Digvrata*, (Taking a life-long vow) to limit (his worldly activity to fixed points in all the 10 directions, (i. e. East, West, North South, South-east, East-north, North-west, and West-south, and up and down).

2. देशभक्त, *Deshavrata*, (Taking a vow to limit (the above also for a) shorter period of time, e. g. for one's weekly or daily worldly activity).

3. अनर्थदण्डभक्त, *Anarthadanda-vrata*, (Taking a vow) not to commit purposeless sin, (It has 5 kinds):

(1) अपाध्ययन, *Apadhyana*, Thinking ill of others,

(2) पापपदेश, *Papapadesha* Preaching of sin (to others),

(3) प्रमदचारित्र, *Pramada-charitra*. Thoughtless or inconsiderate conduct (as breaking the boughs of trees, etc., without any purpose).

(4) हितदान, *Himsadana*, Giving objects of offence (to others).

(5) दुःश्रुति, *Duhshruti*, (reading or) hearing bad (books.)

The above 3, i. e. *Digvrata*, *Deshavrata* and *Anarth-dandavrata* are called *गुणव्रत* *Gunavrata*s, multiplicative vows, because they raise the value of the 5 vows (*Ahimsa*, etc.)

4. समयिक *Samayika*, (Taking a vow to devote so much time everyday, (once, twice or three times, at sunrise, sunset and noon to) contemplation of the self (for spiritual advancement.)

5. प्रोषधोपवास, *Prosadhopavasa*, (Taking a vow to) fast (on 4 days of the month, viz., the two अष्टमी 8th and the two चतुर्दशी 14th days of every lunar fortnight.)

(Fast means abstention from food and drink, and devoting one's time to religious study and contemplation, etc.)

6. उपभोग-परिभोग-परिमाण *Upabhoga-paribhoga-parinama*, (Taking a vow every day) limiting one's enjoyment of consumable and non-consumable things.

7. अतिथि संविभगा *Atithi-samvibhaga*. (Taking a vow to take one's food (only after) feeding the ascetics with a part (of it.)

If ascetics are scarce, another person may be fed in their place, if he is observing the vows of a house-holder or is possessed of right belief, or any afflicted or poor person.

These last 4, (i. e., *Samayika*, *Prosadhopavasa*, *Upabhoga-paribhogaparimana* and *Atithi-samvibhaga*) are called शिखरव्रत *Sikshavratas*, disciplinary vows, so called because they are preparatory for the discipline of ascetic's life.

SUTRA 22

मारसन्तिकीं सल्लेखतां ज्ञेयिता ॥ २२ ॥

Marasantikim sallekhanam jñeṭita.

(The house-holder is also) the observer in the last moment of his life, (of the process of) सल्लेखना *Sallekhanā*, peaceful death (which is characterised by non-attachment to the world and by a suppression of the passions.)

Thus the house-holder's vows are 12, with the last or peaceful death as their supplement.

SUTRA 23

शंकाकांक्षा विचिकित्साभ्यद्रष्टिप्रशंसातस्तवाः सम्यग्दृष्टे रतिचाराः ॥ २३ ॥

Shankakanksavichikitsanyadristiprashamsasametavah samyagd-risteraticarah.

(There are 5) defects or partial transgressions (मतिचाराः) (which should not be found) in a man of right belief :

1. शंका, *Shanka*, Doubt, Scepticism ;
2. कांक्षा, *Kanksa*, Desire of sense-pleasures ;
3. विचिकित्सा, *Vichikitsa*, Disgust at anything, e. g., with a sick or deformed person ;
4. अन्यदृष्टिप्रशंसा, *Anyadristiprashamsa*, Thinking admiringly of wrong believers ;
5. अन्यदृष्टिसंस्तवा, *Anyadristi-sanstava*, Praising wrong believers.

SUTRA 24

व्रतशीलेषु पञ्च पञ्च यथाक्रमम् ॥ २४ ॥

Vrata shilesu pancha pancha yathakramam.

(There are) 5 (defects) respectively in each (of the 5) व्रत *Vrata*, vows, and (7) शिला *Shila*, supplementary vows, (which should be avoided.)

SUTRA 25

बन्धवच्येदातिभारारोपणसंपाननिरोधः ॥ २५ ॥

Bandha badhachchhedati-bhara ropana sanpana nirodhah.

(The partial transgressions of the first vow बन्धिता बन्धन are :)

1. बन्ध, (Angrily or carelessly) tying up (an animal or human being.)

2. ११, (Angrily or carelessly beating (an animal or human being).
3. क्षेद. " " " mutilating " " " "
5. अतिभारोपण, " " " with-holding food or drink from an animal or human being.

SUTRA 26

मिथ्योपदेशरहोभ्याख्यानकूटलेखक्रियान्यासापहारसाकारमन्त्रभेदाः ॥२६॥

**Mithyopadesha rahobhyakhyana kuta lekha kriya
nyasapahara sakara mantrabhedah.**

(The partial transgressions of the second vow सत्याव्रत, *Satyanuvrata*, are :)

1. मिथ्योपदेश, *Mithyopadesha*, Preaching false doctrines.
2. रहो भ्याख्यान, *Rahobhyakhyana*, Divulging the secret (actions of man and woman,)
3. कूटलेखक्रिया *Kutalekhakriya*, Forgery (and perjury.)
4. न्यासापहार, *Nyasapahara*, Unconscientious dealing by means of speech, e. g., A deposits Rs. 1,000 with B, and then thinking that he has deposited only Rs. 900, demands Rs. 900. B says : Yes, take whatever you deposited and gives him Rs. 900. This is *nyasapahar*.
5. साकारमन्त्रभेद, *Sakaramantrabhedah*, Divulging what one guesses by seeing the behaviour or gestures of others, who are consulting in private.

SUTRA 27

स्तेनप्रयोगनदाहृतादानविरुद्धराज्यातिक्रमहीनाधिकमानोन्मानप्रतिरूपक
व्यवहाराः ॥ २७ ॥

**Stena prayogata dahritadanaviruddha rajyatikrama
hinadhika manonmanapratiirupaka vyavaharah.**

(The partial transgressions of the third vow अचौर्याव्रत *Achauryanuvrata*, are :)

1. स्तेनप्रयोग, *Stenaprayoga*, Abetment of theft.
2. तदाहृतादान *Tadahritadana*, Receiving stolen property.
3. विरुद्धराज्यातिक्रम, *Viruddharajyatikrama*, Illegal traffic, (e. g., by selling things at inordinate prices in time of war, or) to alien enemies, etc.

4. शून्यधिकमानोन्मान *Hinadhika-manonmana*. False weights and measures.
5. प्रतिरूपकव्यवहार, *Pratirupaka-vyavahara*, Adulteration.

SUTRA 28

प रविवाहकरणोत्वरिकापरिगृहीताप रिगृहीतागमनानङ्गक्रीडाकामती प्राप्ति-
निवेशा : ॥ २८ ॥

**Paravivahakaranaetvarikaparigrihitaparigrihitaga-
mananangakrida kamativrabhiniveshah.**

(The partial transgression of the fourth vow *व्रतचर्य* are :)

1. परविवाहकरण *Paravivahakarana*, Bringing about the marriage of people who are not of one's own family.
2. इत्वरिकापरिग्रहीतागमन *Itvarikaparigrahitagamana*, Intercourse with a married immoral woman.
- इत्वरिकाअपरिग्रहीतागमन, *Itvarikaaparigrahitagamana*, Intercourse with an unmarried immoral woman.
4. अङ्गक्रीडा, *Anangakrida*, Unnatural sexual intercourse.
5. कामतीप्राप्तिनिवेश, *Kamativrabhiniveshah*, Intense sexual desire.

SUTRA 29

क्षेत्रवास्तुहिरण्यसुवर्णधनधान्यदासीदासकुप्यप्रमाणातिक्रमा : ॥ २९ ॥

Ksetravastuhiranyasuvarnadhanadhandanyadasidasakupyapramanatikramah.

Transgressing the limit of fields, houses, silver, gold, cattle, corn, female and male servants, clothes.

NOTE—The partial transgressions of the fifth vow *परिमहपरिमाणव्रत*, *Parigrahaparimanavrata*, arise when a man limits the quantity of say two kinds of things, but then changes the proportion of those things, although the quantity remains the same, e. g., he limits his land possessions to 4 fields and 2 houses. Then wanting a house more, he acquires 3 houses and reduces the fields by one. Thus though the number and possibly the value of his possessions may remain the same, still the limit of his vow is partially transgressed. This sort of

transgression may be between 5 pairs of possessions as follows:

1. { क्षेत्र, Fields.
गृह, Houses.
2. { चिरेय, Silver.
सुवर्ण, Gold.
3. { धन, Cattle.
अन्न, Corn.
4. { दासी, Female-servant.
दास, Male-servant.
5. { कृष्य, Clothes, etc., (i.e., things of toilet, etc.)
(भाण्ड, Bhandā, crockery or utensils.)

SUTRA 30

ऊर्ध्वाधस्तिर्यग्व्यतिक्रमक्षेत्रवृद्धिस्मृत्यन्तराधानानि ॥ ३०॥

**Urdhvadhadstiryagvyatikramakṣetravṛddhi
smṛityantarādhānani.**

(The partial transgressions of the first गुणव्रत *guṇavṛata*, i. e., विग्रहत, *digvṛata*, are :)

1. ऊर्ध्वव्यतिक्रम, *Urdhva-vyatikrama*, (In passion or negligence to go up) higher than your limit (in the vow.)
2. अधःव्यतिक्रम, *Adhah-vyatikrama*, (In passion or negligence to go down) lower than your limit (in the vow.)
3. तिर्यग्व्यतिक्रम, *Tiryag-vyatikrama*, (In passion or negligence to go in the) other 8 directions, beyond your limit (in the vow.)
4. क्षेत्रवृद्धि *Kṣetravṛddhi*, (In passion or negligence) to increase (in one and decrease in the other direction), the boundaries (of the distance which is the limit in the vow.)
5. स्मृत्यन्तराधान, *Smṛityantarādhana*, Forgetting the limit in the vow (but still to go on recklessly, This transgression will arise even if the limit vowed is not exceeded.)

SUTRA 31

अनयनप्रेष्यप्रयोगशब्दरूपानुपातपुद्गलक्षेपाः ॥ ३१ ॥

Anayanapṛeṣyaprayogaśhabdarūpanupātapudgalakṣepaḥ.

(The partial transgressions of the second *Guṇavṛata*, i. e., देशव्रत, *deśavṛata*, are :)

1. अनंयन, *Ananyana*, sending for something from beyond the limit.
2. प्रेक्ष्ययोग, *Prasyaprayoga*, sending some one out beyond the limit.
3. शब्दानुपत, *Shabdanupata*, sending one's voice out beyond limit, e. g., by telephone.
4. रूपानुपत, *Rupanupata*, making signs for persons beyond the limit, as the morse code with flags, etc.
5. पुद्गलक्षेप *Pudgalakṣepa*, Throwing something material beyond the limit.

SUTRA 32

कन्दर्पकोत्थमौख्यसिमीक्ष्यधिकरणोपभोगपरिभोगानर्थक्यानि ॥ ३२ ॥

Kandarpakautkuchyamaukharyasamiksyadhikaranopabhogaparibhoganarthakyaṇi.

(The partial transgression of the "Third Gunavṛata," i. e., अनर्थवद्व-
गत *anarthadandavṛata*, are :

1. कन्दर्प, *Kandarpa*, Poking fun at another.
2. कौकुच्य, *Kautkuchya*, Gesticulating, and mischievous practical joking.
3. मौख्य, *Mauhkarya*, Gossip ; garrulity.
4. समीक्ष्यधिकरण, *Asamiksyadhikarana*, Overdoing a thing.
5. उपभोगपरिभोगानर्थक्य, *Upabhogaparibhoganarthakya*, Keeping too many consumable and non-consumable objects.

SUTRA 33

योगदुःप्रणिधानानादरस्मृत्यनुपस्थानानि ॥ ३३ ॥

Yogaduhpranidhananadarasmṛtyanupasthanani.

(The partial transgressions of the first शिष्यव्रत, *Śiṣyavṛata*, i. e., सामयिक *Samayika*, are :)

1. मनोदुष्प्रणिधानम्, *Manoduspranidhanam*, Misdirection of mind (during meditation.)
2. कायदुष्प्रणिधानम्, *Kayaduspranidhanam*, Misdirection of body (during meditation.)
3. वाक्यदुष्प्रणिधानम्, *Vakduspranidhanam*, Misdirection of speech during meditation.

4. अनार, *Anadara*, Lack of interest.
5. स्मृत्यनुपस्थान, *Smrityanupasthana*, Forgetting of due formalities.

SUTRA 34

अप्रत्यवेक्षिताप्रमार्जितोत्सर्गादानसंस्तरोपक्रमणानादरस्मृत्यनुपस्थानानि ॥ ३४ ॥

**Apratyaveksitapramarjitotsargadanasamstaropakram-
ananadarasmrityanupasthanani.**

(The partial transgression of the second सिक्खाव्रत, *Siksiavrata*, i. e., प्रोषधोपवास, *Prosadhopavasa*, are :)

1. अप्रत्यवेक्षिताप्रमार्जितोत्सर्ग, *Apratyaveksitapramarjitotsarga*, To excrete in a place without inspecting and without sweeping it.
2. अप्रत्यवेक्षिताप्रमार्जितादान, *Apratyaveksitapramarjitadana*, To take up or lay down things in a place, without inspecting and without sweeping it.
3. अप्रत्यवेक्षिताप्रमार्जितोत्सर्गोपक्रमण, *Apratyaveksitapramarjita Sanstaropakramana*, To spread a mat or seat in a place, without inspecting and without sweeping it.
4. अनार, *Anadara*. Lack of interest.
5. स्मृत्यनुपस्थान, *Smrityanupasthana*, Forgetting of due formalities.

SUTRA 35

सचित्तसम्बन्धसम्मिश्राभिषवदुपक्वाहाराः ॥ ३५ ॥

Sachittasambandhasammishrabhisavaduhpakvahara.

(The partial transgression of the third सिक्खाव्रत *Siksavrata* i.e. उपभोग-परिमोक्षपरिमाणव्रत, *Upbhogaparibhagoparimanavrata*, are :

1. सचित्तिहार *Sachittahara*, Taking living things, e. g. green vegetable
2. सचित्तसम्बन्धाहार, *Sachittasambanda Ahara*, Taking anything connected with a living things, e. g. using a green leaf as a plate.
3. सचित्तसम्मिश्राहार *Schittasammihra Ahara*, Taking a mixture of living and non-living things, e. g. hot with fresh water.
4. अभिषवहार, *Abhisavahara*, Taking aphrodisiacs, or strengthening or exciting food.
5. दुःपक्वाहार, *Duhpakvahara*, Taking badly cooked food.

SUTRA 36

सच्चित्तनिकसेपापिधानपरव्यपदेशमात्सर्यकालातिक्रमा ॥ ३६ ॥

Sachittaniksepapidhanaparavyapadoshamatsarya kalatikramah

(The partial transgression of the fourth शिखाव्रत *Sikṣavrata*, i. e. अतिथिसंविभागाव्रत, *Atithisambibhagavratra*, are :)

1. सच्चित्तनिकसेप, *Sachittaniksepa*, Placing the food on a living thing.
e. g. on a green plantain leaf
2. नचिक्तापिधान, *Schittapīdhana*, Covering the food with a living thing.
3. परव्युपदेश, *Paravyupadesha*, Delegation of host's duties to another.
4. मात्सर्य *Matsarya*, Lack of respect in giving, or envy of another donor.
5. कालातिक्रम *Kalatikrama*, Not giving at the proper time.

SUTRA 37

जीवितमरणाशसामित्रानुरागसुखानुबन्धनिदानानि ॥ ३७ ॥

Jivitamaranasamsamitrānūragasukhanubandhanidanāni.

(The partial transgression of सल्लेखना *Sallekhana* (peaceful death) are :)

1. जीवितारंशा, *Jivītaśansa*, Desire to prolong one's life.
2. मरणाशंसा, *Marnashansa*, Desire to die soon.
3. मित्रानुराग, *Mitrānūraga*, Attachment to friends.
4. सुखानुबन्ध, *Sukhanubandha*, Repeated remembrance of past enjoyments.
5. *Nidana*, Desire of enjoyments in the next world.

SUTRA 38

अनुग्रहार्थं स्वस्यातिसर्गो दानम् ॥ ३८ ॥

Anugrahartham svasyatisarṅgo dānam

Charity is the giving off one's belongings for the good (of one's self and of others.)

SUTRA 39

विधिद्रव्यदातृपात्रविशेषाद्विशेषे ॥ ३९ ॥

Vidhidravyadatṛpatravīśeṣattadvīśeṣah.

(The fruition of charity is) different (according to the difference in :

1. विधि, *Vidhi*, Manner.
2. द्रव्य, *Dravya*, Thing given.
3. दातृ, *Datṛi*, Person who gives, and
4. पात्र, *Patra*, Person to whom it is given.

The manner of giving is of 9 kinds :

1. संग्रह, *Samgraha*, Respectful reception of an ascetic. The usual formula is : "Welcome ! welcome. Food and drink are pure here."
2. उच्चस्थान, *Uchchasthana*, Seating him on a exalted seat.
3. पादोदक, *Padodaka*, Washing his feet.
4. अर्चन, *Archana*, Worshipping him.
5. प्रणाम, *Pranama*, Bowing to him.
- 6—8. वाक्कवमनःशुद्धि, *Vakkayamanahsuddhi*, Being pure in speech body and mind.
9. पदशुद्धि, *Esanashuddhi*, Faultless way of giving food.

The thing given must be helpful in study and austerities.

The person who gives must have 7 qualities :

1. ऐहिकफलानपेक्षा, *Aihikafalanapekṣa*, Must not wish any gain in this world in its exchange.
2. क्षान्ति, *Ksanti*, Must give calmly without anger.
3. मुदित, *Mudita*, Must be happy at giving.
4. निष्कपटता, *Niskapatata*, Without deceit.
5. अनयसक्त, *Anasuyatva*, Without envy.
6. अविविदित, *Avisaditva*, Without repentance, and
7. निराहङ्कारत्व, *Nirahankaratva*, Without pride.

The person to whom it is given must be one of the three kinds :

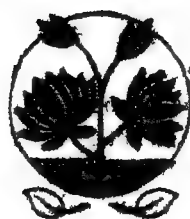
1. उत्तमपात्र, *Uttamapatra*, Ascetics,
2. मध्यमपात्र, *Madhyamapatra*, Laymen with vows,

3. जग्घनपात्र, *Jaghanyapatra*, Layman with right belief but not with vows,

These three with right belief are called सुपात्र *Supatras*, good donees, and those who are with proper external conduct but without real right belief are कुपात्र *Kupatras*, deficient donees. Unworthy donees (*Apatras*) are those who have neither proper external conduct nor real right belief. There is no merit in giving them anything.

There is also a कल्याण *Karuna-dana*, or the gift of compassion to anyone—Jain or non-Jaina, human or sub-human being, who is in need of it. This charity is of 4 kinds :

1. आहार, *Ahara*, Food.
2. औषधि, *Ausadhi*, Medicine.
3. अभय, *Abhaya*, Reassuring the frightened, or removing their cause of fear.
4. विद्या, *Vidya*, Knowledge.



अध्याय आठवां

CHAPTER VII

SUTRA 1

मिथ्यादर्शनाविरतिप्रमादकाययोगा बन्धहेतवः ॥ १ ॥

**Mithyadarshanaviratipramadakasayayoga bandha
hetavah.**

The causes of (बन्ध) Bandha or bondage are :

1. मिथ्यादर्शन Mithyadarshana, wrong belief. It is of 5 kinds :

(1) एकान्त Ekanta. Taking only one aspect of a many-sided thing e.g. man is mortal and un-mortal, regarded from the point of view of body and soul respectively. Taking only one view is Ekanta.

(2) विपरीत Viparita, perverse belief, e.g. animal sacrifices lead to heaven.

(3) संशय Samshaya, Doubt, scepticism, hesitation, e.g., as to path to Liberation.

(4) विनय Vinaya, Veneration. Taking all religions and gods to be equally worthy of pursuit.

(5) अज्ञान Ajnana. Wrong belief caused by ignorance. Indiscrimination of good and bad. It is caused by :

निसर्ग, Nisarga, inborn error ; or by अधिगम Adhigama, preaching of another.

The last is of 4 kinds :

क्रियावादी Kriyavadi, belief in time, soul, etc., as causing everything in the world.

अक्रियावादी Akriyavadi, opposite of the last.

अज्ञानिक Ajnanika, Agnostic.

वैनेयिक Vaineyika, Religion is identical with veneration of parents, king, etc, e.g., Confucianism.

All these four together form 363 varieties of wrong belief (or पादपद) i.e., 180, 84, 67 and 32 respectively.

निसर्गज्ञ Nisargaja is also called अग्रहीत Agrahita, अधिगमज्ञ Adhigamaja, ग्रहीत Grahita.

(2) अविरति Avirati, vowlessness. Non-renunciation. It is of 12 kinds :

Lack of compassion for 6 classes of embodied souls, and lack of restraint of 5 senses and 1 mind.

(3) प्रमदः Pramada, Carelessness, This is of 15 kinds :

Four kinds of कथा Katha, talk, about :

1 Food (भोजनकथा Bhojana-Katha).

2 Women (स्त्रीकथा, Stri-Katha).

3 Politics (राज्यकथा Rajya-Katha).

4 Scandal (विराकथा Desha-Katha).

5 Senses (इन्द्रिय).

4 Passions (कषाय).

1 Affection (स्नेह).

1 Sleep (निद्रा).

15 Each together bring 80 भङ्गा bhangs, divisions :

As : 1 Katha \times 1 sense \times 1 passion \times 1 Sneha \times 1 Nidra = one.

So : 4 kinds of talk \times 5 senses \times 4 passions \times 1 affection \times 1 sleep = 80.

4. कषाय Kasaya, passions, given below (सूत्र Sutra 9).

5. योग Yoga. Vibrations in the soul, through mind, body and speech. They are of 15 kinds :

4 of mind :

(1) सत्यमन Satyamana, true mind.

(2) असत्यमन Asatyamana, false mind.

(3) उभयमन Ubhayamana, mixed true and false mind.

(4) अनुभयमन Anubhaya-mana, neither true nor false.

4 of speech :

(1) सत्यवचन Satya-vachana, True

(2) असत्यवचन Asatya-vachana, False

(3) उभयवचन Ubhaya-vachana, Both

(4) अनुभववचन Anubhaya-vachana None.

7 of body:

(1) औदारिक Audarika, physical.

(2) औदारिकमिश्र Audarika-mishra, i.e. physical with karmic

(3) वैश्रियक Vairiyaka, Fluid.

(4) वैश्रियकमिश्र Vairiyaka-mishra. Fluid with karmic.

(5) आहारक Aharaka.

(6) आहारकमिश्र Aharaka-mishra, i.e. Aharaka with ph⁴sic⁸

(7) कर्मण्य Karman. Karmic.

[NOTE—The तैजस Taijas, electric body, is always found with the karmic body, never has independent yoga (योग). The

electric molecules are drawn like the karmic molecules by the vibrations set in the soul by yoga of any kind:

As to these 5 causes of bondage:

In the 1st, 2nd and 3rd गुणस्थान *Gunasthanas*, Stages of Spirituality all the causes are found, though in the second the first is absent for a very short time.

In the 4th *Gunasthana*, all but the 1st are found.

In the 5th and 6th *Gunasthanas*, all but the first 2 are found.

In the 7th, 8th, 9th and 10th *Gunasthanas*, all but the first 3 are found.

In the 11th, 12th and 13th *Gunasthanas*, all but the first 4 are found.

In the 14th *Gunasthana* none.

These 5 are collectively called प्रत्यय *Pratyaya*.

(See कुन्दकुन्दाचार्येण सम्यक्सारप्रामुक्तम्, *Kundakundacharya's Samaya Sara Prabhritam*.)

SUTRA 2

सकषायत्वाज्जीवः कर्मणो योग्यान्पुद्गलानादतो स बन्धः ॥ २ ॥

Sakasayatvajjivah karmano yogyan pudgala nadatte sa bandhah.

The soul, owing to its being with passion, assimilates matter which is fit to form karmas. This (is) बन्ध *bandha*.

SUTRA 3

प्रकृतिस्थित्यनुभागप्रदेशस्तद्विधेयः ॥ ३ ॥

Prakriti sthityanubhagapradeshastadvidhayah.

(There are 4) kinds of that (bondage) according to

1. प्रकृति *Prakriti*. Nature of karmic matter, e. g. क्षान्नाकर्षणी knowledge-obscuring, or दर्शनाकर्षणी cognition-obscuring, etc.

2. स्थिति *Sthiti*. Duration of the attachment of karmic matter to the soul.

3. अनुभव *Aunbhava*. The fruition being strong or mild, (also called अनुभाग *Anubhaga*).

4. प्रदेश *Pradesha*. The number of karma vargas or karmic molecules, which attach to the soul.

The first and the last are caused by योग *yoga*, vibratory activity of the soul and middle two by कषाय *kashaya* passions.

SUTRA 4

आद्यो ज्ञानदर्शनावरणवेदनीयमोहनीययुतमिगीशान्तरायः ॥ ४ ॥

**Adyo jnanadarshanavarana vedaniyamohaniyayurna-
magotrantarayah.**

The main divisions of the nature of karmic matter are 8:

1. ज्ञानावरण, *Jnanavarana*, knowledge-obscuring.
2. दर्शनावरण, *Darshanavarana*, conation-obscuring.
3. वेदनीय, *Vedaniya*, Feeling-karma.
4. मोहनीय, *Mohaniya*, Deluding.
5. आयु *Ayu*, Age.
6. नाम, *Nama*, Body-making.
7. गोत्र, *Gotra*, Family-determining.
8. अन्तराय, *Antaraya*, Obstructive.

SUTRA 5

पञ्चनवद्वयष्टाविंशतिचतुर्द्विचत्वारिंशद्विपञ्चभेदा यथाक्रमम् ॥ ५ ॥

**Panchanavadvyastavinsatichaturdvichatvarimsaddvipan-
chabheda yatha karmam.**

(They are of) 5, 9, 2, 28, 4, 42, 2, 5 classes respectively.

This 42 has been classified into 93, so that sub-classes come to

148.

SUTRA 6

मतिश्रुतावधिमानः पर्यय केवलानाम् ॥ ६ ॥

Matisrutavadhimanah paryaya kevalanam

(ज्ञानावरण, *Jnanavarana*, knowledge-obscuring is of 5 kinds, according, as it is :)

1. मति (ज्ञानावरण), *Mati Janavarana*, Sensitive. (knowledge obscuring).
2. श्रुत (ज्ञानावरण), *Shrut-Jnanavarana*, Scriptural (knowledge-obscuring).
3. अवधि (ज्ञानावरण), *Avadhi-jnanavarana*, Visual (knowledge obscuring.)

4. मनःवधेय (मानावरण), *Manahpariyavaya-jnanavarana*, Mental (knowledge-obscuring.)
5. केवल (वानावरण) *Kevala-jnanavarana*, Perfect (knowledge obscuring.)

SUTRA 7

चक्षुरचक्षुर्यधि केवलानां निद्रानिद्रानिद्राप्रचलाप्रचलाप्रचला
स्त्यानगृह्यद्दयश्च ॥ ७ ॥

Chaksura chaksura-yadhi kevalanam nidrahidranidraprachalaprachalastyanagrddhapasch, kadafeduedye.

(दर्शनावरण, *Darshanavarana*, Conation-obscuring is of 9 kinds according as it) obscures :

1. Ocular-obscuring, (चक्षु दर्शनावरण) *Chaksu Darshanavarana*.
2. Non-ocular-obscuring, (अचक्षु दर्शनावरण) *Achaksu* „
3. Visual-obscuring, (अवधिदर्शनावरण) *Avadhi Darshanavarana*,
4. Perfect-conation-obscuring, (केवलदर्शनावरण) *Kevala* „
(And 5 kinds of sleep :)
1. Sleep, (निद्रा) *Nidra*
2. Deep sleep, (निद्रानिद्रा) *Nidranidra*.
3. Drowsiness, (प्रचला) *Prachala*.
4. Heavy-drowsiness, (प्रचलाप्रचला) *Prachala Prachala*, and
5. Somnambulism, (स्त्यानगृहि) *Styanagriddhi*.

स्त्यानगृहि *Styanagriddhi* is so called because the activity of the person is manifested in sleep. This is always associated with painful or undesirable conditions of mind. According to Jainism, it is attended with a kind of monomania, i. e., with अर्तस्थान *Arta-dhyana* and with unrighteous or wicked concentration, i. e., with रौद्र स्थान *raudra-dhyana*.

SUTRA 8

सदसद्देहे ॥ ८ ॥

Sadasadvedye.

द्वीव *Vedaniya* or feeling (is of 2 kinds :)

1. सात्ववेदनीव *Satavedaniya*, Pleasure-bearing, and
2. असात्ववेदनीव *Asatavedaniya*, Pain-bearing.

SUTRA 9

दर्शनचारित्र्यमोहनीयाकषायवेदनीयाख्यास्त्रिद्वितयबोधसमेदः सम्यक्त्व-
मिध्यात्वतदुभयान्यकषायकषावोद्भास्यरत्यरतिसोकभयजुगुप्सास्त्री पुनर्पुंसकवेदा
अतन्तानुबन्ध्यप्रत्याख्यानप्रत्याख्यानसंज्वलनविकल्पाश्चैकशःकोषमा-
नमायालोभाः ॥ ६ ॥

**Darsana charitramohaninyakasayavedaniyakhyastridvi-
navasodasa bhedahsamyaktvamithyatvatadubhayanyakas
ayakasayauhasyaratyaratisokabhayajugupsastripunna pu-
nsaka vedaanantanubandhya pratyakhyanaapratyakhyana
pratyakyanasamjvalana vikalpaschaikasaahkrodhamana
mayalobha.**

मोहनीय *Mohaniya*, Deluding (is of 28 kinds. the Primary divisions are two :)

1. दर्शनमोहनीय *Darshanmohaniya*, Right-belief-deluding.
2. चारित्र्यमोहनीय *Charitramohaniya*, Right-delief-deluding.

(Right-conduct-deluding 2 kinds :)

1. अकषायवेदनीय *Akasaya-vedaniya*, or नोकषय *Nokasaya*, with slight passions.
2. कषायवेदनीय *Kasaya-vedaniya*, with passions.

(They are of) 3,2,9,16 (kinds respectively :)

(Right-belief-deluding दर्शनमोहनीय is of 3 kinds :)

1. मिथ्यात्व *Mithyatva*, Wrong-belief.
2. सम्यक् मिथ्यात्व *Samyakmithyatva*, mixed wrong and right belief.
3. सम्यक् प्रकृतिमिथ्यात्व *Samyak-prakriti-mithyatva*, Right-belief with e slight pefect, i. e. clouded by slight wrong belief.

(*Akasaya-vedaniya* or no-kasaya is of 9 kinds :)

1. हास्य *Hasya*, Risible, laughter-producing.
2. रति *Rati*, Indulgence.
3. अरति *Arati*, Ennui, Dis-satisfaction, langour.
4. शोक *Shoka*, Sorrow.
5. भय *Bhaya*, Fear.
6. जुगुप्सा *Jugupsa*, Disgust.
- स्त्रीवेद *Striveda*, Faminine inclinations.
8. पुंवेद *Pumveda*, masculine inclinations.

9. मनुष्यकवेद *Napunsakaveda*, Common inclinations.

(कश्यपवेदनीयः *Kasapyavedaniya*, is of 16 kinds :)

(4 passions) क्रोध Anger, मान Pride, माया Deceit, लोभ Greed.

Each of these is of 4 kinds.

1. अनन्तानुबन्धी *Anantanubandhi*. Error-feeding or wrong-belief assisting. These are so called because they keep the soule bound in संसार *Samsar*, which is called अनन्त "*Ananta*" and in which the soul is kept wandering by these passions feeding its erroneous belief. *Ananta* also means wrong belief. And these Passions are called *Anantanubandhi*, because they nourish or feed wrong belief. It is very lasting. (like a stone-engraving.

2. अप्रत्यक्ष्यान *Apratyakhyana*, Partial-vow-preventing. It is less lasting (as a furrow).

3. प्रत्याख्यान *Pratyakhyana*, Total-vow-preventing. It is mild (as a line in dust.)

4. संन्यजन *Samnyajana*, Perfect-right-conduct-preventing. It is very mild (as a line in water.)

[Thus we get 16, i.e., (4×4) kinds.]

The 16 are exemplified as follows :

Anger is deep like a furrow in stone;

" " earth ;

" line " dust ;

" " water;

Pride is unbending like a mountain, bone, wood, cane.

Deceit is crooked like a bamboo-root, horn of a ram, stream of cow-water, hoof-mark.

Greed is fast like crimson colour, wheel-dirt, body-dirt, tarmaric colour.

See Gommatasara-Jiva, Kanda Gatha, 283-286.

SUTRA 10

नारकतैर्यग्योनमानुषदैवानि ॥ १० ॥

Narakatairagyonamanusadāivani.

(आयु *Ayu*. Age-karma bondage is of 4 kinds,) according as it determines :

The (1) नरक *Naraka*, Hellish,

(2) तिर्यक् *Tiryak*, Sub-human ;

(3) मनुष्य *Manusya*, Human, and

(4) देव *Deva*, Celestial (character of the soul's life.

आयु *Ayu* is so-called, because the soul-जीति *Ēti*, comes to enter a new condition of existence.

SUTRA 11

गतिजातिशरीरांगोपांगनिर्माणबन्धनसंघातसंस्थानसंहननस्पर्शरसगन्धवर्ण-
रूपरस्यगुरुलक्ष्मपघातपरघाततपोद्योतोच्छ्वासविहायोमतयः प्रत्येकशरीरत्रसमुभग-
सुस्वरक्षुभसूक्ष्मपर्याप्तिस्थिरादेयशःकीर्तिसेतराणि तीर्थकरत्वं च ॥ ११ ॥

**Gatijatisharirangopanga nirmanabandhana sanghata sam-
sthana samhanana sparsha rasagandha varnanupurva guru
laghupaghata paraghata tapo dyoto chchhvasa vihayo gatayah
pratyeka sharira trasa subhaga susvara shubha sukma paryap
tishira deya yashah kirti setarani tirthakaravtam cha.**

(The नामकर्म *Namakarma*. Body-making bondage is of 42, i. e., with sub-classes of 93 kinds, as they bring about their respective effect.)

4 गति *Gati*, Condition of existence :

- (1) नरक *Naraka*, Hellish.
- (2) तिर्यच *Tiryancha*, Sub-human.
- (3) मनुष्य *Manusya*, Human.
- (4) देव *Deva*, Celestial.

Gati is so-called, because by the operation of this karma, the soul गच्छति *Gachchhati* goes from one to another condition of existence.

5 जाति *Jati*, Genus of beings :

- (1) एकैन्द्रिय *Ekendriya*, one-sensed.
- (2) द्विन्द्रिय *Dvi-indriya*, two-sensed.
- (3) त्रिन्द्रिय *Tri-indriya*, Three-sensed.
- (4) चतुर्न्द्रिय *Chatu-indriya*, four-sensed.
- (5) पञ्चेन्द्रिय *Panch-indriya*, Five-sensed.

Jati is a karma by the operation of which a soul is born in a class, in which other souls, of a similar condition, are also grouped.

5 शरीर *Sharira*, Bodies :

- (1) औदारिक *Audarika*, Physical.
- (2) वैक्रियिक *Vaikriyika*, Fluid.
- (3) आहारक *Aharaka*, Aharaka.
- (4) तैजस *Taijasa*, Electric.
- (5) कर्म *Karmaka*, Karmic.

Sharira is the karma, by the operation of which material molecules are set moving to form a particular body.

6 अंगोपांग *Angopanga*, Limbs and minor-limbs :

- (1) औदारिक *Audarika*, In physical bodies.

(2) वैक्रियिक *Vaikriyika*, In fluid bodies.

(3) आहारक *Aharaka*, In aharaka, bodies.

1 निर्माण *Nirmana*, Proper formation of limbs and minor limbs in relation to their situation (स्थाननिर्माण *Sthana-nirmana*) and Dimensions (प्रमाणनिर्माण *Pramana-nirmana*.)

5 बन्धन *Bandhana*, 5 kinds of molecular bondage, according as the body is :

(1) औदारिक *Audarika*, Physical.

(2) वैक्रियिक *Vaikriyika*, Fluid.

(3) आहारक *Aharaka*, Aharaka.

(4) तैजस *Taijasa*, Electric.

(5) कर्मण *Karmana*, Karmic.

5 संघात *Sanghata*. Interfusion of molecules of different kinds of bodies in weaving them with the soul. It takes place in :

(1) औदारिक *Audarika*, Physical.

(2) वैक्रियिक *Vaikriyika*, Fluid.

(3) आहारक *Aharaka*, Aharaka.

(4) तैजस *Taijasa*, Electric, and

(5) कर्मण *Karmana*, Karmic bodies.

6 संस्थान *Samsthana*. Figure of the body :

(1) समचतुरस्र संस्थान *Sama-chaturasra-samsthana*. Perfect proportion all round.

(2) न्यग्रोधपरिमण्डलसंस्थान *Nyagrodhaparimandala-samsthana*. Like a banyan tree, short in the lower extremities and large in the upper body.

(3) स्वातिसंस्थान *Svati-samsthana*. It is the reverse of the last.

(4) कुब्जसंस्थान *Kubja-samsthana*. Hunch-back.

(5) वामनसंस्थान *Vamana-samsthana*. Dwarf.

(6) हुडङ्कसंस्थान *Hundaka-samsthana*. Quite disproportionate

6 संहानन *Samhanana*. 6 kinds of skeleton or osseous structure:

(1) वज्र ऋषभ नराच संहानन *Vajra risabha naracha samhanana*. Adamantine nerves, joints (or amphiarthrodial articulation, when the bones are slightly moveable and united by an intervening substance) and bones.

(2) वज्रनाराचसंहानन *Vajra naracha samhanana*. Adamantine joints and bones.

(3) नराचसंहानन *Narachsamhanana*. Joints and bones. Ordinary amphiarthrodial articulation and bones.

- (4) अर्धनाराचसंभन *Ardhanarachasamhanana*. Semi-joints and bones. A form of articulation weaker than *Narachasamhanana*.
- (5) क्रीलित संभन *Kritisamhanana*. Jointed bones. Synarthrodial articulation in which bones are unmoveable and directly united.
- (6) असम्प्रप्राप्तपटिकासंभन *Asampraptaspatikasamhanana*. Loosely-jointed bones. Diarthrodial articulation in which bones may be more or less freely moveable, when the articular surfaces are covered with smooth cartilage and surrounded by a fibrous capsule. Most of the joints of the human body are of this form.

8 स्पर्श *Sparsha*. 8 kinds of touch :

- (1) उष्ण *Usna*, Hot.
- (2) शीत *Shita*, Cold.
- (3) स्निग्ध *Snigdha*, Smooth.
- (4) रुक्ष *Ruksha*, Rough.
- (5) मृदु *Mridu*, Soft.
- (6) कर्करा *Karkasha*, Hard.
- (7) लघु *Laghu*, Light.
- (8) गुरु *Guru*, Heavy.

रस *Rasa*. 5 kinds of taste:

- (1) तिक्त *Tikta*, Pungent
- (2) कटुक *Katuka*, Bitter.
- (3) कषाय *Kasaya*, Acid,
- (4) आम्ल *Amla*, Sour.
- (5) मधुर *Madhura*, Sweet.

2 गन्ध *Gandha*. Smells :

- [1] सुगन्ध *Sugandha*, Sweet-smelling.
- (2) दुर्गन्ध *Durgandha*, Evil-smelling.

5 वर्ण *Varna*. Colours :

- (1) शुक्ल *Shukla*, White.
- (2) कृष्ण *Krisna*, Black.
- (3) नील *Nila*, Indigo.
- (4) रक्त *Rakta*, Red.
- (5) पीत *Pita*, Yellow.

4 आनुपूर्वी *Anupurvi*. The power of retaining the form of the body in the last incarnation, during the विग्रहगति *Vigraha-gati*, i. e., the passage of the soul from one condition of existence to another. Relating to the forms of the 4 condi-

tions of existence, to which the soul is proceeding:

- (1) नरकगत्यानुपूर्वी *Narakagatyanupurvi*, Hellish.
- (2) त्रियगात्यानुपूर्वी *Triyagatyanupurvi*, Sub-human.
- (3) मनुष्यागत्यानुपूर्वी *Manusyagatyanupurvi*, Human.
- (4) देवागत्यानुपूर्वी *Devagatyanupurvi*, Celestial.

Narakagatyanupurvi means retaining form of previous life before hellish one and so on.

अगुरुलघु *Agurulaghu*. Neither too heavy to move nor too light to have stability.

उपघात *Upaghata*. The possession of a self-destructive limb or organ which becomes the cause of one's own death. As a kind of stag with horns, which when they become too heavy, cause his death.

परघात *Paraghata*. Possessed of a limb or organ fatal to others, e. g., the sting of a scorpion, etc.

आतप *Atapa*. Radiant heat. Possessed of a body which is brilliant and bearable to the owner but intolerable and heating for the others. Such as the gross earth-bodied souls in the Sun, from which sunshine comes.

[Hot light like Sun-shine.]

उद्योत *Udyota*. Phosphorescence. An illuminated body like that of the fire-fly. Such as the earth-bodied souls in the moon.

[Cold light like Moon-shine.]

उच्छ्वास *Uchchhvasa*. Respiration.

2 विहायोगति *Vihayogati*. Capacity of moving in आकाश, space. This is of 2 kinds:

(1) शुभविहायोगति *Shubhavihayogati*, Graceful, like that of a swan.

(2) अशुभविहायोगति *Ashubhavihayogati*, Awkward.

प्रत्येकसारि, *Pratyeksharira*. A body possessed and enjoyable by one soul only ; as a mango.

साधारणसारि, *Sadharanasharira*. One body possessed and enjoyable by many souls ; as a potato, etc.

त्रस *Trasa*. Mobile. Having a body with 2, 3, 4, 5, senses.

स्थक्, *Sihavara*. Immobile. Having a body with one sense only, i. e. touch.

दुष्प, *Subhaaga*. Amiable personality even though not beautiful.

दुर्लभ, *Durbhaga*. Unprepossessing, even though beautiful.
 सुस्वर, *Susvara*. Sweet-voiced. Pleasing toned, with musical voice.
 दुस्वर, *Dusvara*. Harsh-voiced.
 शुभ, *Shubha*. Beautiful body.
 अशुभ, *Ashubha*. Ugly-body.
 सूक्ष्म, *Shuksma*. Fine body, uncuttable, all-pervasive.
 बद्ध, *Badara*. Gross-body.

पर्याप्ति, *Parayapti*. Within one अन्तर्मुहूर्त *Antarmuhurta*, the gaining by the soul of the capacity to develop fully the characteristics of the body into which it incarnates. The developments are of 6 kinds, 1st 4 only in one-sensed souls, 1st 5 in 2, 3, 4, and 5 sensed souls, but only in 5 sensed souls without mind (असंज्ञी *Asanjñi*) all the 6 in others.

1. आहारपर्याप्ति, *AharaParyapti*. In taking of the molecules to make the body.
2. शरीरपर्याप्ति, *Sharira-Paryapti*. Development of body.
3. इन्द्रियपर्याप्ति, *Indriya Paryapti*. Development of sensed organs.
4. प्राणायानपर्याप्ति, *PranapanaParyapti*. Development of respiratory organs.
5. भाषापर्याप्ति, *Bhasa-Paryapti*, Development of vocal organs.
6. मनपर्याप्ति, *Mana Paryapti*, Development of the organs of the mind. अपर्याप्ति *Aparyapti*, To die within one अन्तर्मुहूर्त *Antarmuhurta*, without gaining the above.

स्थिर *Sthira*. Steady circulation of blood, bile, etc., e. g. among men. Steady circulation, etc., relates to 7 kinds of धातु *Dhatu*, primary physiological matter, i e.:

- (1) रस, *Rasa*, Juice.
- (2) रक्त, *Rakta*, Blood.
- (3) मांस, *Mansa*, Flesh.
- (4) मेद, *Meda*, Fat.
- (5) अस्थि *Asthi*, Bone.
- (6) मज्जा, *Majja*, Marrow.
- (7) शुक्र, *Shukra*, Semen virile.

The nutrition taken in, is transformed into these 7 gradually in 30 days. From one to the other the transformation takes $2\frac{1}{2} = 4\frac{1}{2}$ days.

The 7 kinds of उपधातु *Upadhatu* or secondary physiological matter are :

- (1) वायु, *Vata*. Wind.
- (2) पित्त, *Pitta*.
- (3) श्लेष्म, *Shlesma*, Phlegm.

- (4) शिरा, *Shira*, A tubular vessel of the body, as vein.
 (5) स्नायु, *Snayu*, Muscle.
 (6) चर्म, *Charma*, Skin.
 (7) उदराग्नि, *Udaragni*, Digestive fire of the stomach, gastric fluid.

All these remain steady where they ought to be, by the operation
 स्थिरत्वान्तराग्निं *Sthira-nama-karma*.

अस्थिर, *Asthira*. unsteady circulation of blood, bile, etc., e. g.,
 among women.

आदेय, *Adeya*. Radiant appearance, so as to effect others.

अनादेय, *Anadeya*. Dull appearance.

यशः कीर्ति, *Yashahkirti*. Bringing good fame.

अयशः कीर्ति, *Ayashahkirti*. Bringing bad name even if he does good
 actions.

तीर्थंकर, *Tirthakara*. A Tirthankara's career, with all its grandeur,
 when He preaches and completes His ministry.

SUTRA 12

उच्चैर्नीचैश्च ॥ १२ ॥

Uchchairnichaishcha.

(गोत्रकर्म, *Gotra* or Family-determining karma is of 2 kinds :

- (1) उच्चगोत्र *Uchchagotra*, High ; and
- (2) नीचगोत्र, *Nichagotra*, Low.

SUTRA 13

दानलाभभोगोपभोगवीर्याणाम् ॥ १३ ॥

Danalabhabhogopabhogaviryanam.

(अन्तरायकर्म *Antaraya* or Obstructive karma is of 5 kinds, as it
 obstructs :)

- (1) दानान्तराय, *Danantaraya*, Charity.
- (2) लाभान्तराय, *Labhantaraya*, Gain.
- (3) भोगान्तराय, *Bhogantaraya*, Enjoyment of consumable things.
- (4) उपभोगान्तराय, *Upabhogantaraya*, Enjoyment of nonconsumable
 things.
- (5) वीर्यान्तराय, *Viryantaraya*, Exercise of one's capacities, power.

Note—The प्रकृति, *Prakriti* or nature of the bondage is finished
 here. Now we go on to consider the duration of the bondage,

SUTRA 14

आदितस्तिस्रशामन्तरायस्य च त्रिंशत्सागरोपमवेदकीकोट्यः परा स्थितिः ॥ १४ ॥

**Aditastisrinamantarayasya cha trinshatsagropamakotik-
otyah para sthiti.**

The maximum duration of the 3 from the first, (i. e. कर्मावरणीय knowledge-obscuring, दर्शनावरणीय Conation-obscuring and वेदनीय Feeling karmas,) and of अन्तराय Obstructive-karmas, is 30 crore × crore सागर *Sagaras*.

This is possible in a rational 5 sensed, fully developed (पर्याप्त *pariyapta*) soul, and having wrong belief (मिथ्यात्व *Mithyatva*.)

SUTRA 15

सप्ततिर्मोहनीयस्य ॥ १५ ॥

Saptatirmohaniyasya.

(The maximum duration) of मोहनीय Deluding-karma (is): 70 (crore × crore sagaras.)

SUTRA 16

विंशतिर्नामगोत्रयोः ॥ १६ ॥

Vinshatirnamagotrayoh.

(The maximum duration) of नाम *Nama*, Body-making and गोत्र, *Gotra*, Family-determining (karmas is) 20 (crore × crore सागर *Sagars* for each.)

This is also possible as above.

SUTRA 17

त्रयस्त्रिंशत्सागरोपमायुष्यः ॥ १७ ॥

Trayastrinshatsagaropamanyayusah.

(The maximum duration) of आयु, *Ayu*, Age karma (is) 33 सागर *Sagaasr*.

SUTRA 18

अपरा द्वादशमुहूर्ता वेदनीयस्य ॥ १८ ॥

Aparadvadashamuhurta vedaniyasya.

(The minimum duration) of वेदनीय, *Vedaniya*, Feeling karma (is) 12 मुहूर्त *Muhurtas* = 12 × 48 minutes.

SUTRA 19

नामगोत्रयोरष्टौ ॥ १९ ॥

Namagotrāyoraṣṭau.

(That) of नाम *Nama*, Body-making and गोत्र *Gotra*, Family-determining (is) 8 (मुहूर्त *Muhurtas*.)

SUTRA 20

शेषाणामन्तर्मुहूर्ता ॥ २० ॥

Shesānamantarmuhurta.

Of all the rest (The minimum is) one अन्तर मुहूर्त *Antar-muhurta*, (which ranges from 1 समय *Samaya* and 1 आवृत्ति *Avatī* at the lowest to 48 minutes—1 समय *Samaya*.)

SUTRA 21

विपाकोऽनुभवः ॥ २१ ॥

Vipako'anaubhavaḥ.

अनुभव *Anubhava* (is the maturing and) fruition of karmas.

SUTRA 22

सयथानाम् ॥ २२ ॥

Sa yathanama.

That (fruition is) according to the name (of the karma.), e. g., ज्ञानावरोधक knowledge-obscuring karma prevents the acquisition of knowledge and so on.

SUTRA 23

ततश्च निर्वरा ॥ २३ ॥

Tatashcha nirjara.

After that (fruition, the karmas fall off. That is) निर्वरा *Nirjara*.
It is of 2 kinds :

1. सविपाक *Savipaka*, where the soul in the maturity of time is, rid of the karmas by their operating and falling off from it.
2. अविपाक *Avipaka*, when by force of ascetic practices etc. (तप *Tapa* etc.) The karmas which had not yet matured to operate, are induced to fall off from the soul.

SUTRA 24

नामप्रत्ययाः सर्वतो योगविशेषात्सूक्ष्मैकक्षेत्रावगाहस्थिताः सर्वात्मप्रदेशेष्वनन्ता-
न्तप्रदेशाः ॥ २४ ॥

**Namapratyayah sarvato yogavishesatsuksmaikaksetrava-
gahasthitah sarvatmapradeshesvanantanantapradeshah.**

(According to the nature) caused by their names, from all round, due to the difference in the vibrations (योग *Yoga*) in the soul activity, not perceptible by the senses, the karmic molecules enter and become one and stay with every moment, to each soul.

The particular number of the molecules actually absorbed is called प्रदेशबन्ध *pradesha-bandha*.

SUTRA 25

सद्वैद्यशुभायुर्नामगोत्राणि पुण्यम् ॥ २५ ॥

Sadvaidyashubhayurnamagotrani punyam.

पुण्य *Punya*, or meritorious karmas (are the following :) :

1. सवैद्य, *Sadvedya* or सातवेदनीय, *Satavedaniya*, pleasure-bearing.
2. शुभायु, *Shubhayu*, good age-karma.
3. शुभनाम, *Shubha-nama*, good body-making karma.
4. शुभगोत्र, *Shubha-gotra*, high-family-determining.

Their sub-classes are 42 :

1. सातवेदनीय, *Sata-vedaniya*. Pleasure-bearing.
2. शुभायु, *Shubhayu* : 1. तिर्यक, *Tiryakcha*, Sub-human
2. मनुष्य, *Manusya*, Human.
3. देव, *Deva*, Celestial.

37 शुभनाम, Shubhanama :

- 2 गति *Gatis* : (1) Human, (2) Celestial.
 1 जाति *Jati* : 5 sensed (genus of feelings).
 3 शरीर *Sharira*, all 5 bodies.
 3 अंगोपांग *Angopanga*, all 3 limbs and organs.
 1 संस्थान *Samsthana*, perfect proportion समस्तु (संस्थान).
 1 संहनन *Samhanana*, the highest वन् कृपय न। १२ संहनन
 1 स्पर्श, *Sparsha*.
 1 रस. *Rasa*.
 1 गन्ध, *Gandha*.
 1 वर्ण, *Varna*.
 2 अनुपूर्वी *Anupurvī* : human and celestial.
 1 अगुरुलघु *Agurulaghu*.
 1 परघात *Paraghata*.
 1 उच्छ्वास *Uchchhvasa*
 1 आतप *Atapa*.
 1 उद्योत *Udyota*.
 1 विहायोगति *Vihayogati*, i. e. Shubha.
 1 त्रस *Trasa*.
 1 कादर *Badara*.
 1 पर्यापति *Paryapati*.
 1 प्रत्येक शरीर *Pratyeka-sharira*.
 1 स्थिर *Sthira*.
 1 शुभ *Shubha*.
 1 शुभग *Shubhaga*.
 1 सुस्वर *Susvara*.
 1 आदेय *Adeya*.
 1 यशः कीर्ति *Yashah-kirti*.
 1 निर्माण *Nirmana* (Shubha).
 1 तीर्थकर *Tirthakar*. [For the meaning of all these see Sutr. 1 above.]
 1 उच्छगोत्र *Uchchagotra*. High family.

When they are Subha (शुभ)

42 Total.

SUTRA 26

अतोऽन्यत्पापम् ॥ २६ ॥

Atoanyatpapam.

(The karmas) other than these (are) पाप *Papa* (or demeritorious karmas.)

अध्याय नवां

CHAPTER IX SUTRA 1

आश्रवनिरोधः संवरः ॥ १ ॥

Ashravanirodhah samvarah.

संवर Samvara (is) the stoppage of inflow of karmic matter into the soul.

The causes of Inflow and Bondage are given in Ch. VIII, Sutra I.

Wrong belief (Mithyadarshana) is stopped (Samvara) in the 4th spiritual stage (Gunasthana) ;

Vowlessness (Avirati) in the 5th and 6th ;

Carelessness (Pramada) in the 7th ;

Passion (Kasaya) in the 8th, 9th and 10th ;

Vibration (Yoga) in the 14th stage.

For the 14th Spiritual Stages see Ch. X, Sutra 2.

SUTRA 2

स गुप्तिसमितिधर्मानुप्रेक्षापरीषहजयचारित्र्यैः ॥ २ ॥

Sa guptisamitidharmanupreksaparisahajayacharitrai.

It (is produced by :)

3 kinds of गुप्ति *Gupti*, Preservation.

5 " " समिति *Samiti*, Carefulness.

10 " " धर्म *Dharma*, Observances; (Dharma.)

12 " " अनुप्रेक्षा *Anupreksa*, Meditation.

22 " " परिषा जय *Parisah-jaya*, Subdual of sufferings, and

5 " " चारित्र्य *Charitra*, Conduct.

SUTRA 3

तपसा निर्जरा च ॥ ३ ॥

Tapasa nirjara cha.

By austerities (is caused) shedding of karmic matter, and (also stoppage of inflow.)

SUTRA 4

सम्यग्योगनिग्रहो गुप्तिः ॥ ४ ॥

Samyaggyoganigrahoguptih.

गुप्ति *Gupti*. Prevention (is) proper control (nigraha) over mind
मनः, speech वचन and body काय.

SUTRA 5

इयंभार्षणादाननिक्षेपोत्सर्गः समितयः ॥ ५ ॥

Eryabhasaisanadananiksepotsargah samitayah.

समिति *Samiti*, Carefulness (is) to take.(सम्यक्ईयानमिति), *Samyakiryasamiti*. Proper care in walking.(सम्यक्भाषासमिति), *Samyakbhasasamiti* „ „ „ speaking.(सम्यक्पण्णासमिति), *Samyakesanasamiti* „ „ „ eating.(सम्यक्दादाननिक्षेप समिति), *Samyakadananiksepasamiti*. Proper care
in lifting and laying.(सम्यक्उत्सर्गसमिति), *Samyakutsargasamiti*. Proper care in excreting

SUTRA 6

उत्तमक्षमामार्दवार्जवशौचसत्यसंयमतपस्त्यागाकिञ्चन्यब्रह्मचर्याणि धर्मः ॥ ६ ॥

Uttamaksamamardavarjava shauchasatyasamyama
tapastyaga kinchanyabrahmacharyani dharmah.

(The १० महावर्णधर्म, 10 Observances are :)

उत्तमक्षमा *Uttama-ksama*, Forgiveness.उत्तममार्दव *Uttama-mardava*, Humility.उत्तमार्जव *Uttama-arjava*, Straight-forwardness, (Honesty)उत्तमशौच *Uttama-shaucha*, Contentment.उत्तम सत्य *Uttama-satya*, Truth.उत्तम संयम *Uttama-samyama*, Restraint.उत्तम तप *Uttama-tapa*, Austerity.उत्तम त्याग *Uttama-tyaga*, Renunciation.

उत्तमआकिञ्चन्य *Uttama-Akimchanya*, Not taking the non-self for
one's own self (non-attachment) and

उत्तमब्रह्मचर्य *Uttama-brahmacharya*, Chastity, all of the highest
degree.

SUTRA 7

अनित्यसंसारकृत्यानां शुच्यसंस्कारिर्निरालोकबोधिपूर्वकवर्त्तमान-
व्यस्तानुक्तिस्तन्मनुषेयः ॥ ७ ॥

**Anityasharanasamsaraikatvanyatvashuchyasravasamvarani-
rjaralokabodhidurlabhadharmasvakhayatattvanuchintanamanu-
prekshā.**

(The द्वादशानुपेक्षा, 12 meditations are :)

1. अनित्यानुपेक्षा, *Anityanupreksha*, Everything is subject to change or transitory.
2. भ्रशरानुपेक्षा, *Asharananupreksha*, Unprotectiveness, Helplessness. The soul is unprotected from the fruition of karmas, e. g., death, etc.
3. संसारानुपेक्षा, *Samsaranupreksha*, Mundaneness. Soul moves in the cycle of existences and cannot attain true happiness till he is out of it.
4. एकत्वानुपेक्षा, *Ekatvanupreksha*, Loneliness. I am alone the doer of my actions and the enjoyer of the fruits of them.
5. अन्यत्वानुपेक्षा, *Anyatvanupreksha*, Separateness. Otherness. The world, my relations and friends, my body and mind, they are all distinct and separate from my real self.
6. अशुच्यानुपेक्षा, *Ashuchyanupreksha*, Impurity. The body is impure and dirty. Purity is of 2 kinds : of the soul itself ; and of the body and other things. This last is of 8 kinds.
7. आश्रयानुपेक्षा, *Asravanupreksha*, Inflow. The inflow of karmas is the cause of my mundane existence and it is the product of Passions, etc.
8. संवरानुपेक्षा, *Samvaranupreksha*, Stoppage. The inflow must be stopped.
9. निर्जरानुपेक्षा, *Nirjaranupreksha*, Shedding. Karmic matter must shed from or shaken out of the soul.
10. लोकानुपेक्षा, *Lokanupreksha*, Universe. The nature of the Universe and its constituent elements.
11. बोधिलब्ध्यानुपेक्षा, *Bodhidurlabhanupreksha*, Rarity of Right Path. It is difficult to attain right belief, knowledge and conduct.
12. धर्मस्वभावतानुपेक्षा, *Dharmasvabhavatatanupreksha*, Nature of Right Path. The true nature of Truth, i. e., the 3 fold path to real Liberation.

(These must be) meditated upon again and again. As to the first kind of meditation; viz., transitoriness अनित्यानुपेक्षा, *anityānupreksa* it must be noted that as Substance, every thing is permanent. Only *वपः* condition is transitory. Of the matter assimilated as karma and by the soul, that which is accepted by the soul is called उपत्ता *Upatta*. The rest is अनुपत्ता, *Anupatta* matter which is not taken in by the soul.

SUTRA 8

मार्गच्यवननिर्जगर्थं परिषोढव्याः परिषहाः ॥ ८ ॥

Margachyavananirjarartham parisodhavyah parisahab.

For the sake of now-falling-off from the path (of Liberation,) and for the shedding (of Karmic matter, whatever sufferings are) undergone (are called) the परिषहाः "Sufferings."

SUTRA 9

क्षुतिपासाशीतोष्णदंशमशकनाग्न्यारतिस्त्रीचर्यानिषद्याशय्याक्रोशवध्या-
चनाऽलाभरोगदुःखस्पर्शमलसत्कारपुरस्कारप्रज्ञानाज्ञाऽदर्शनानि ॥ ९ ॥

**Ksutpipasashitosnadāṁshamasakanagnyarati stricharyanisa-
dyashayyakroshavadhayachanaalabhaarogatrnaśparshamala-
satkara puraskaraprajñāajnanadarśhnani.**

(The 22 परिषहाः Sufferings are:)

1. कुप, Hunger.
2. पिपासा, Thirst.
3. शीत, Cold.
4. उष्ण, Heat.
5. दंश मशक, Insect bites, mosquitoes etc.
6. नाग्न्य, Nakedness.
7. अरति, Ennui, dissatisfaction, languor
8. स्त्री, Women.
9. चर्या, Walking too much ; not to feel the fatigue, but to bear it calmly.
10. निषया, Sitting. Not to disturb the posture of meditation, even if there is danger from lion, snake etc., etc.
11. शय्या, Sleeping. Resting on the hard earth.
12. आक्रोश, Abuse.
13. वध, Beating.

14. नाचना (or नाचना), Begging. (To refrain from begging even in need.)
15. अभाव, Failure to get alms.
16. रोग, Disease.
17. वृक्षस्पर्श, Contact with thorny shrubs, etc.
18. मल, Dirt. Discomfort from dust, etc.
19. सत्कार पुरस्कार, Respect on disrespect.
20. प्रभा, Conceit of knowledge.
21. अज्ञान, Lack of knowledge.
22. अदर्शन, Slack belief, *e. g.*, on failure to attain supernatural powers.

SUTRA 10

सूक्ष्मसाम्परायच्छधस्थवीतरागयोश्चतुर्दश ॥ १० ॥

Suksmasamparayachhadmasthavitaragayoshchaturdasha.

In सूक्ष्मसाम्पराय, *Suksmasamparaya*, (the stage of) "Slight Passions", (*i. e.*, where all the passions have subsided or are destroyed, except the slightest greed.) (In) छधस्थवीतराग, *Chhadmasthavitaraga*, (उपशान्तमोह, *Upashantamoha*) where all the passions are suppressed. (In) क्षीणमोह *Ksinamoha* where all the passions are destroyed, *i. e.*, to beings in the 10th, 11th and 12th stages of Spirituality, only) 14 (are possible, *i. e.*, all except the 8 sufferings, due to deluding karmas, *viz* :

- (1) नाग्न्य, Nakedness.
- (2) अरति, Ennui, dissatisfaction, etc.
- (3) स्त्री, Women.
- (4) निषण्ण, Sitting or posture.
- (5) आक्रोश, Abuse.
- (6) नाचना, Begging.
- (7) सत्कारपुरस्कार, Respect and disrespect.
- (8) अदर्शन, Slack belief.

SUTRA 11

एकादश जिने ॥ ११ ॥

Ekadasha jine.

To जिन, *Jina*, Arhat, (*i. e.*, in the 13th गुणस्थान, *Gunasthana*, spiritual stage the 4 गतिजाकर्म, *Ghatiyakarmas*, destructive karmas having been destroyed, only) 11 (sufferings are possible, They are due to वेदनीय, *Vedaniya*, karma. They are :)

- (1) Hunger.
- (2) Thirst.
- (3) Cold.
- (4) Heat.
- (5) Insect-bites.
- (6) Walking.
- (7) Hard earth-bed.
- (8) Beating.
- (9) Disease.
- (10) Contact with thorny shrubs, etc.
- (11) Dirt.

But as a rule, because the मोहनीय, Mohaniya Deluding and अन्तराय, Antaraya, Obstructive Karmas are destroyed, these sufferings hardly ever arise.

SUTRA 12

वादरसाम्पराये सर्वे ॥ १२ ॥

Vadarasamparaye sarve.

To वादरसाम्पराय, Vadarasamparaya, the saints (who are below the 10th stage युगस्थान, i.e., who are in the 6th, 7th, 8th or 9th stages of spirituality, and) with slightly gross passions, all (the 22 परिषदः Sufferings are possible.)

SUTRA 13

ज्ञानावरणो प्रज्ञाज्ञाने ॥ १३ ॥

Jnanavarane prajñajñane.

प्रज्ञाConceit and अज्ञान, Lack of knowledge ; sufferings (are caused) by (the operation of) ज्ञानावरणो, Knowledge-obscuring Karmas.

SUTRA 14

दर्शनमोहान्तरायमोरदर्शनालाभौ ॥ १४ ॥

Darshanamohanantarayamordarshanalahau.

अदर्शन, Slack-belief (by) दर्शनमोहनीय, right-belief-deluding, and failure to get alms by अन्तराय Obstructive, karma.

SUTRA 15

चारित्रमोहेनन्यारतिस्त्रीनिषद्याक्रोशयाचनसत्कास्पुस्कारा : ॥ १५ ॥

**Charitramohanagayaratistrinisadyakroshayachanasatkara-
puraakarah.**

Nakedness, Ennui, Woman, Sitting or Posture, Abuse, Begging, Respect and disrespect (sufferings are due to) चारित्रमोहनीय right-conduct deluding karmas.

SUTRA 16

वेदनीयेषोषाः ॥ १६ ॥

Vedaniyesheshah-

The rest (are caused) by वेदनीय, Vedaniya Karmas. (They are 11 and given in the 11 th Sutra above).

SUTRA 17

एकादयो भाज्या युगपदेकिस्मिन्नकोनविंशति : ॥ १७ ॥

Ekadayobhajyayugapadokasminnaikonavinshati.

From 1 to 19 at one and the same time can be possible to a saint; (but not more than 19.)

This is obvious for there are 2 sets of contradictory sufferings, which can not co-exist, as:

Heat and Cold.

Sitting and walking and sleeping on hard earth.

SUTRA 18

सामायिकच्छेदोपस्थापनापरिहारविशुद्धिसूक्ष्मसाम्पराय यथाख्यातमिति
चारित्रम् ॥ १८ ॥

**Samayikachchhedopasthapanapariharavishuddhisukemasampar
ayayathakhyatamiti charitram.**

(The 5 kinds of) सूक्ष्म चारित्र Right conduct (are:)

(1) सामायिक, Equanimity.

(2) चेदोपस्थापना, Recovery of equanimity after a fall from it.

(3) परिहारविशुद्धि, Pure and absolute non-injury.

(4) सूक्ष्मसाम्पराय, All but entire freedom from passion.

(5) समाख्यत, Ideal and passionless conduct.

परिहारविशुद्धि, Parihara-vishuddhi is found only in a man of 37 or 38

years, who has served the तीर्थंकर Tīrthankar for 7 or 8 years, i. e., from the age of 30 to that of 37 or 38. He must have read the प्रत्याख्यानपूर्व Pratyakhyanapurva. See Jiva-Kanda-Gatha 471-2.

SUTRA 19

अनश्नानवमोदर्यद्वृत्तिपरित्यागरसपरित्यागविविक्तशय्यासनकायक्लेशा

बाह्यं तपः ॥ १९ ॥

Anashanavamodaryyavritti-parisankhyanasasaparitya-gaviviktashaypasana kayakhsa bahyam tapah.

(तप *Tapa*, austerities are बाह्य external and अन्तर, internal.)

External austerities (are 6 :))

1. अनशन Anshana, Fasting.
2. अवमोदर्य, *Avamodaryya*, Eating less than one's fill, than one has appetite for.
3. वृत्तिपरित्याग, *Vritti-parisankhyana*, Taking a mental vow to accept food from a house-holder, only if a certain condition is fulfilled, without letting any one know about the vow.
4. रसपरित्याग, *Rasaparityaga*, Daily renunciation of one or more of 6 kinds of delicacies, viz.
 1. Ghee (Butter, clarified butter.)
 2. Milk.
 3. Curd.
 4. Sugar.
 5. Salt.
 6. Oil.
5. विविक्तशय्यासन, *Vivikta-shayyashana*, Sitting and sleeping in lonely place, devoid of animate beings.
6. कायक्लेश, *Kayaklesha*, Mortification of the body, so long as the mind is not disturbed.

SUTRA 20

प्रायश्चित्तविनय वैयावृत्यस्वाध्यायव्युत्सर्गध्यानान्युत्तरम् ॥ २० ॥

Prayashchittavinayavaiyavrttyasvadyayavyutsargadhy-ananyuttaram

The other, (i.e., Internal, austerities are also 6 :

1. प्रायश्चित्त *Prayashchitta*, Expiation.
2. विनय *Vinaya*, Reverence.
3. वैयावृत्य *Vaiyavrttya*, Service (of the saints or worthy people.)

4. स्वाध्याय, *Svādhyaya*, Study.
5. व्युत्सर्ग, *Vyutsarga*, Giving up attachment to the body, etc
6. ध्यान, *Dhyana*, Concentration.

SUTRA 21

नवचतुर्दशपञ्चद्विभेदा यथाक्रमं प्राध्यानात् ॥ २१ ॥

**Navahcaturdashapanchadvibhedayathakramam
pragdhhyanat**

(The सम्पत्तर तप, Internal austerities) previous to ध्यान, Concentration (are respectively of) 9, 4, 10, 5, and 2 kinds.

SUTRA 22

आलोचनाप्रतिक्रमणतदुभयविवेकव्युत्सर्गतपश्छेद परिहारोपस्थापना : ॥ २२ ॥

**Alochanapratikramanataadubhayavivekavyutsarga-
paschhedapariharopasthapanah.**

(The 9 kinds of प्रसक्ति, expiation are :

1. आलोचन, *Alochana*, Full and voluntary confession to the head of the order.
2. प्रतिक्रमण, *Pratikramana*, Self-analysis and repentance for faults.
3. तदुभय, *Tadubhaya*, Doing both.
4. विवेक, *Viveka*, Giving up a much-beloved object, as a particular food. or drink.
5. व्युत्सर्ग, *Vyutsarga*, Giving up attachment to the body
6. तप, *Tapa*, Austerities of a particular kind prescribed in a penance.
7. छेद, *Chheda*, Cutting short the standing of a saint by way of degradation.
8. परिहार, *Parihara*. Rustication for some time.
9. उपस्थापन, *Upasthapanah*, Fresh re-admission, after expulsion from the order.

Any of the above 9 penances is prescribed by the Head, according to the transgression in a particular case.

SUTRA 23

ज्ञानदर्शनचारित्र्योपचारः ॥ २३ ॥

Jnanadarshanacharitropacharah.

(विनय Reverence is of 4 kinds)

1. ज्ञानविनय, *Jnanavinaya*, For right knowledge;
2. दर्शनविनय, *Darshanavinaya*, For right-belief,
3. चरित्रविनय, *Charittravinaya*, For right-conduct and
4. उपचारविनय, *Upacharavinaya*, by observing proper forms of respect, as folding the hands bowing etc., etc.,

SUTRA 24

आचार्योपाध्यायतपस्विशैक्ष्यग्लानगणकुलसंघसाधुमनोज्ञानाम् ॥ २४ ॥
Acharyopadhyayatapasvishaiksyaglanagenakulasangha-sa dhu manojnanam.

(वैशाख्य Service is of 10 kinds, as it relates to the :)

1. आचार्य, *Acharya*, Head of an order of saints.
2. उपाध्याय, *Upadhyaya*, Preceptor in an order of saints.
3. तपस्वि, *Tapasvi*, Saint who practises severe austerities as long fasts, etc.
4. शैक्ष्य, *Shaiksyas*, Student saint.
5. ग्लान, *Glana*, Invalid saints.
6. गण, *Gana*, Brothers of the same order (*gana*.)
7. कुल, *Kula*, Fellow-disciples of the same Head.
8. संघ, *Sangha*, Whole order as such, (i. e., all the 4 classes of which the order consists .

- (1) ऋषि, *Rishi*, Saint with miraculous powers.
- (2) यति, *Yati*, Saint with control over the senses.
- (3) मुनि, *Muni*, Saint with Visual and Mental knowledge.
- (4) अनगर, *Anagara*, Saint, a houseless ascetic.

Or, all the 4 classes of the community, i. e.

- (1) यति, *Yati*, Monk.
- (2) आर्यिका, *Aryika*, Nun.
- (3) श्रवक, *Shravaka*, Layman.
- (4) श्राविका, *Shravika*, Lay-woman.
9. साधु, *Sadhu*, Saint (of long standing.)
10. मनोज्ञ, *Manojna*, Popular saint.

SUTRA 25

वाचनापृच्छनानुप्रेक्षात्मन्यायधर्मोपदेशः ॥ २५ ॥

Vachanaprichchhananuprekhsamnyadharmopadesah.

(स्वाध्याय, *Savadhyaya*, Study is of 5 kinds :)

1. वाचना *Vachana*, Reading,

2. प्रश्न, *Prichchhāna*, Questioning Inquiry on a Doubtful point.
3. अनुप्रेष, *Anupreksha*, Reflection or meditation on what is read
4. अमनास, *Amnaya*, Memorising and proper recitation.
5. धर्मोपदेश, *Dharmopadesha*, Lecturing or delivering sermons.

SUTRA 26

बाह्याभ्यन्तरोपधयोः ॥ २६ ॥

Bahyabhyantaropadhyoh.

(युत्सर्ग, *Vyutsarga*, giving up attachment to wordly objects, is of 2 kinds :)

1. बाह्य उपधि, *Bahya Upadhi*, Of external (things.)
2. अभ्यन्तरोपधि, *Abhyantara-upadhi*, Of internal things (as the passions, etc.)

SUTRA 27

उत्तमसंहननस्यैकाग्रचित्तानिरोधो ध्यानमान्तर्मुहूर्त्तत्वि ॥ २७ ॥

**Uttamasamhananasyaikagrachintanirodho
dhyanamantarmuhurtat.**

ध्यान, *Dhyana*, Concentration is confining (one's thought to one (particular object.) (In a man) with a high-class constitution (of bone, nerves, etc., i. e., the first 3 out of the 6 संहनन *Samhananas*, it lasts at the most for, i. e., upto one अन्तरमुहूर्त्त *Antaramuhurta*, (i. e., 48 minutes minus one समय, *Samaya*.)

SUTRA 28

आर्तारौद्रधर्म्यशुक्लानि ॥ २८ ॥

Artaraudradharmashuklani.

(It is of 4 kinds :)

1. आर्तध्यान *Artadhyana*, Painful concentration ; monomania,
2. रौद्रध्यान *Rudradhyana*, Wicked concentration on unrighteous gain, etc.
3. धर्मध्यान, *Dharmadhyana*, Righteous concentration.
4. शुक्लध्यान, *Shukladhyana*. Pure concentration. i. e., concentration on the soul,

SUTRA 29

परे मोक्षहेतु ॥ २९ ॥

Pare mokṣahetu.

The last two (परमेष्ठान, मुक्तस्थान) *Dharma and Shukla*, are the causes of Liberation. (The other two आर्तस्थान, बन्धस्थान are the causes of mundane bondage.)

SUTRA 30

आर्तममनोज्ञस्य सम्प्रयोगे तद्विप्रयोगाय स्मृतिसमन्वाहारः ॥ ३० ॥

Artamamanojñasya samprayoge tadviprayogaya smritisamanvaharah.

आर्तस्थान, Painful concentration or monomania (is of 4 kinds.) The first kind of) monomania, (is अनिष्ट संबोध्य *Aniṣṭa samyogaja*), On connection with an unpleasing (object,) to repeatedly think of separation from it.

SUTRA 31

विपरीत मनोज्ञस्य ॥ ३१ ॥

Viperitam manojñasya.

(The second monomania is its opposite, i. e. इष्टविशेषेण *Iṣṭaviyogaja*). (On being separated from a pleasing object, to repeatedly think of reunion with it.)

SUTRA 32

वेदनायाश्च ॥ ३२ ॥

Vedanayashcha.

The third monomania is :

(पीडाचिन्तन, *Pida chintavana*), (On being afflicted) by a disease or trouble (to be repeatedly thinking of becoming free from it.)

SUTRA 33

निदानं च ॥ ३३ ॥

Nidanam cha.

(The fourth monomania is :)

निदान, *Nidano*. (On being over anxious to) enjoy (worldly objects and not getting them in this world, to repeatedly think of gaining them) in future.

SUTRA 34

तदविरतदेशविरतप्रमत्तसंनतनाम् ॥ ३४ ॥

Tadaviratadeshaviratapramattasamyatanam.

That (पतयान, Painful concentration is possible only to a man in any of the following stages of spirituality गृहस्थान, :)

अविरत, *Avirata*, Vowless, i. e., in the first 4 stages.

देशविरत, *Deshavirata*, With partial vows, i. e., in the 5th stage.

प्रमत्तनाम्, *Pramattasamyata*. Monk with some carelessness, i. e., in the 6th stage.

(But in this last there can be no nidana.) A vowless person may be a wrong believer or a right believer. Thus there are 4 kinds of souls for painful concentration *vis.*, wrong, believer, right believer, partial vower, imperfect vower. The concentration is worst in a wrong believer and begins to be milder and milder on wards till we reach the man with all vows but which are kept imperfectly.

SUTRA 35

हिसानृतस्तेयविषयसरक्षणेभ्यो रौद्रमविरतदेगविरतयो ॥ ३५ ॥

Himsanrtasteyavisayasamraksanebhyoraudramaviratadeshaviratayoh.

बद्धयान, Wicked concentration (is of 4 kinds :)

1. हिसानन्द, *Himsananda*, Delight in hurtfulness.
2. अस्तानन्द, *Aurtananda*, Delight in falsehoods.
3. स्तेयानन्द, *Steyananda*, Delight in theft.
4. विषय संरक्षानन्द, *Visaya Sanraksanananda*, Delight in preservation of objects of sense-enjoyments.

(This is possible) in the *Avirata*, (i. e., the first 4 and in) *Deshavirata* (i. e., the 5th stages.)

The degrees are the same here as above under Sutra 34. The wrong believer is the worst off.

SUTRA 36

अज्ञापयविपाकसंस्थानविषयाय नम्यम् ॥ ३६ ॥

Ajnapayavipakasamasthanavichyayadharmam.

गोप्यम्, Righteous concentration (is of 4 kinds i. e.,) contemplation of :

1. अज्ञाविचय, *Ajñavichaya*, The Principles taken on the faith of the Scriptures, as being the teachings of the Arhats.
2. अयायविचय, *Apayavichaya*, As to how the universal wrong belief knowledge and conduct of people can be removed.
3. विपाकविचय, *Vipakvichaya*, The fruition of the 8 kinds of karmas.
4. संस्थानविचय, *Sansthana vichaya*, The nature and constitution of the Universe.

[This is possible from the (चतुर्थगुहस्थान) 4th to the (सप्तमगुहस्थान) 7th Spiritual stages.]

SUTRA 37

शुक्ले चाद्ये पूर्वविदः ३७

Shukle chadye purvavidah.

(शुद्धगुहस्थान, Pure concentration is also of 4 kinds :) The first 2 kinds of pure concentration (are only possible to saints) possessed of a knowledge of the 14 पूर्व Purvas.

(This is always present in the 8th and higher spiritual stages गुहस्थान up to 12th.)

SUTRA 38

परे केवलिनः ॥ ३८ ॥

Parekevalinah.

The last 2 kinds of शुद्धगुहस्थान Pure concentration are peculiar to the man of perfect knowledge केवलि (kevalin.)

SUTRA 39

पृथक्त्वं कत्वचित्तं सूक्ष्मक्रियाप्रतिपातिव्युपरतक्रिया निवर्तिनि ॥ ३९ ॥

**Prithaktvaikatvavitarakasuksmakriyapratipativyuparatar-
riyanivartini.**

(The 4 kinds of शुद्धगुहस्थान Pure concentration are :)

- (1) पृथक्त्व चित्तं विचार, *Prithaktva vitarka vichara*, Absorption in meditation of the SELF, but unconsciously allowing its different attributes to replace one another.
- (2) एकत्व चित्तं विचार, *Ekattva vitarka vichara*, Absorption in one aspect of the SELF, without changing the particular aspect concentrated upon.

- (3) सूक्ष्मक्रिया प्रतिपत्ति, *Sukshmakriyapratipati*. The very fine vibratory movements in the soul, even when it is deeply absorbed in itself, in a kevalin.
- (4) व्युपरत क्रिया निवर्ति, *Vyuparatakrīyamvarti*, Total absorption of the soul in itself, steady and undisturbably fixed without any motion or vibration whatsoever.

SUTRA 40

त्र्येकयोगकाययोगयोगानाम् ॥ ४० ॥

Tryekayogakayayogayoganam.

These 4 kinds of शुक्लज्ञान, Pure Concentration inhere in :

- (The 1st प्रथकत्व चित्तकं, *Prathaktvavitarka*, vichara), in (the Saint) with 3 vibratory activities (of the soul through mind, body and speech.
- (The 2nd, एकत्व चित्तकं विचार, *Ekatvavitarkayichara*), in (the Saint) with only any one (of the 3 vibratory activities of the soul ,)
- (The 3rd, सूक्ष्म क्रियाप्रतिपत्ति, *Sukshmakriyapratipati*) in (the संयोग केवलि *Sayogakevalin* in the 13th stage, शुक्लज्ञान, The yoga is) by the body (only ,)
- (The 4th, व्युपरत क्रिया निवर्ति, *Vyuparatakrīya Nivarti*, in (the अव्ययोग केवलि, *Ayogakevalin*, in the 14th stage, शुक्लज्ञान, There is) no yoga or vibratory activity of mind, speech or body.

SUTRA 41

एकाश्रये सवितर्कवीचारे पूर्वे ॥ ४१ ॥

Ekashrayesavitarkavicharepurve.

The first 2 (kinds of Pure concentration are) attainable by one with Scriptural knowledge and consist of meditation upon a part of the Scriptural knowledge. (In the concentration the part meditated upon, may change in character or aspect.

SUTRA 42

प्रवोचार् द्वितीयम् ॥ ४२ ॥

Avicharam dvitiyam.

(But) the 2nd (kind of Pure concentration is) free from any such change.

SUTRA 43

वितर्कः श्रुतम् ॥ ४३ ॥

Vitarkah shrutam.

वितर्कः, *Vitarka*, means Scriptural knowledge.

SUTRA 44

वीचारोऽर्थव्यञ्जनयोगसंक्रान्तिः ॥ ४४ ॥

Vicharorthavyanjanayogasankranti.

विचार, *Vichara*, means संक्रान्ति *Sankranti*, i. e., change in अर्थ, *Artha*, the object of concentration itself, in व्यञ्जन, *Vyanjana*, the verbal expression, or in योग, *Yoga*, i. e., in the vibratory activity with which the concentration is going on, i. e., mind, speech, or body.

SUTRA 45

सम्यग्बुद्धिश्चावकविरतानन्तद्विद्योभक्तदर्शनमोहक्षपकोपशमकोपशान्तमोहक्ष-
पक्षीरामोहजिताः ऋमशोऽमन्व्येयगुणनिर्जराः ॥ ४५ ॥

**Samyagdristishravakaviratanantaviyojakadarshanamohaksapakopashamako-
pasamakopashantamohaksapakaksinamoha jinah kramashoas-
amkhyeyagunavirjara.**

The अविरत, *Avirata*, voluntary, shedding of karmas (in the highest degree of each condition occurs) to an innumerable-fold extent in each of the following stages, compared with the one immediately preceding it.

(The first mention is of the condition of right belief, i. e., the 4th stage in Spiritual Development. In this the shedding is innumerable-fold, अमन्व्येत गुणी, compared with the condition of the soul just before it acquired right belief. The stages as mentioned are:)

सम्यग्बुद्धि, *Samyagdristi*. One who has right belief, the 4th गुणस्थान stage. This stage is reached by (उपशम, *Upashama*). The subsidence or by (क्षयोपशम, *Ksayopashama*) Partial destruction subsidence and operation of the passions which feed wrong belief (अनन्तानुबन्धि), and of 3 kinds of दर्शनयोगनिधि, right-belief deluding karmas.

श्रावक, *Shravaka*, One who takes the layman's vows i. e., partial vows, the 5th (विरतिस्त) stage. By क्षयोपशम, *Ksayopashama* of 4 Passions which obscure renunciation.

विराट, *Virata*. A saint with full vows in the 6th (प्रवृत्त), and 7th (प्रपश्यत) stages. By Ksayopashama of the 4 passions प्रत्यास्थान which obscure total renunciation.

अनन्तविमोक्षक, *Anantaparyojaka*. The same, when he transforms the karmic matter of passions which feed wrong belief, into a lower or less injurious kind of karmic matter of passions.

दर्शनमोहक्षयक, *Darshanamohaksapaka*. The same when he destroys the 3 kinds of right-belief deluding karmas

उपशमक, *Upashamaka*. A saint in the 8th, 9th and 10th गुणस्थान stages, when his (चारित्र्यमोहनीय) right-conduct deluding karmas are subsiding.

उपशान्तमोह, *Upashantamoha*. In the 11th गुणस्थान stage, when his right-conduct-deluding karmas have totally subsided.

क्षयक, *Ksapaka*. A saint in the 8th, 9th and 10th stages, when he is destroying the right-conduct-deluding karmas.

क्षीणमोह, *Ksinamoha*. In the 12th stage, when he has destroyed totally the right-conduct-deluding karmas.

जिन, *Jina*. In the 13th stage, when he becomes केवली, *Kevali*, i. e., Omniscient, after having destroyed all the 4 क्षतिकारक, Destructive karmas, i. e., knowledge, conation, right-belief and right-conduct deluding karmas, and obstructive karmas, (जलान्तराधीय, दराजान्तराधीय, मोहनीय, अन्तराय).

In the 14th गुणस्थान, stage, the 4 अवशेषीय, non-destructive karmas are also totally destroyed.

SUTRA 46

पुलाकवकुशकुशीलनिर्ग्रन्थातका निर्ग्रन्थाः ॥ ४६ ॥

Pulakavakushakushilanirgranthasnatika nirgranthah.

The Nirgranthas, the possessionless (or saints are of 5 kinds :)

1. *Pulaka*, (पुलाक). Like the husk, i. e., some times there is a very slight lapse in the perfect observance of their primary vows (मूलगुण, *Mulaguna*).
2. *Vakusha*, (वकुश). They are still slightly coloured by some consideration of their body, books and disciples.
3. *Kushila*, (कुशील). Sometimes there is a very slight lapse in the perfect observance of their secondary vows, (उत्तरगुण, *Uttarguna*).
4. *Nirgrantha*, निर्ग्रन्थ. The absolutely passionless, in the 11th

and 12th stages.

5. *Snataka*, स्नातक The Kevali, in the 13th and 14th stages.

SUTRA 47

संयमश्चतुप्रतिसेवनातीर्थलिङ्गलेश्योपादस्थानविकल्पतः साध्याः ॥ ४७

**Samyamashrutapratisevanatirthalingaleshyopapada-
sthanavikalpatah sadhyah.**

The distinctions (between the possessionless saints) should be considered with reference to the following (8) matters :

1. *Samyama* (संयम), 5 sorts of conduct.
2. *Sruta*, (श्रुत), Scriptural knowledge.
3. *Pratisevana*, (प्रतिसेवना), Liability to transgression under another's compulsion.
4. *Tirtha*, (तीर्थ), Contemporary or successors of the Tirthankaras.
5. *Linga*, (लिङ्ग), Sign, i. e., saint भावलिङ्ग, both in mind and external observances, and saint द्रव्यलिङ्ग, less in mind and more in external observances.
6. *Leshya*, (लेश्या) Thought colours.
7. *Upapada*, (उपाद), Whether the saints would be reborn in the heavens or attain liberation.
8. *Sthana*, (स्थान), Their stages of conduct and degree of subjection to the Passions.

अध्याय दसवां

CHAPTER X.

SUTRA 1

मोहक्षयात्ज्ञानदर्शनावगम्यान्तरायक्षयान्न केवलम् ॥ १ ॥

Mohaksayatjnanadarshanavarananantarayaksayachchakevalam.

केवलज्ञान, Perfect knowledge (is gained) by destroying the मोहनीय, deluding karmas (in the end of the 10th गुणस्थान stage and then by simultaneous destruction of knowledge and cognition-observing karmas (आचारवर्गाय, दर्शनोपरगुणाय), and of obstructive karmas (अन्तराय) (in the end of the 12th गुणस्थान) stage

SUTRA 2

बन्धहेत्वभां निर्जराभ्यां कृत्स्नकर्मविपरिमोक्षो मोक्षः ॥ २ ॥

Bandhahetvabhavanirjarabhyam kritsnakarmavipramokso mokshah.

जी १, Liberation (is) the freedom from all karmic matter, owing to the non-existence of the cause of bondage and to the shedding (of all the karmas)

• The karmas are destroyed as per stages

14 गुणस्थान, *Gunasthanas*, stages of Spiritual Development :

The thought-activity of the soul due to :

उदय, *Udava*, Operation.

उपशम, *Upashama* subsidence.

क्षय, *Ksava*, Destruction.

रक्षोपशम, *Isavopasham*, Destruction subsidence, of मोहनीय, *Mohanaya*-deluding karmas and योग, (*Yoga*), vibrations in the soul are called गुणस्थान, *Gunasthanas* (lit. The stages or place of attributes or परिणाम, *Parinama*, thought-activity.) Their 14 names are :

मिथ्यात्व, *Mithyatva*, Wrong belief. Delusion. The thought-activity of the soul due to the operation of the दर्शनमोहनीय, right belief-deluding karmas. In this the soul does not believe in the right path to Liberation. From the 1st i. e., this गुणस्थान, *Gunasthana* the soul goes to the 4th (गुणस्थान, *Gunasthana*) always.

2. ससादन, *Sasadana*. Downfall. When there is operation in the 4th stage of one of the 4 अनन्तानुबन्धीकपाप, *Anantanubandhikashayas*, Error-feeling passions, i. e., anger the soul falls down to the 1st stage through the 2nd and the thought-activity in the passage through, is called ससादन, *Sasadana*.
3. मिश्र, *Misra*, mixed. Operation of सम्यक्मिथ्यात्व, *Samyakmithyatvamohniyakarmas* or *Misra Mohniya*. Belief in right and wrong at one and the same time. This is reached always on falling down from the 6th stage.
4. अविरतसम्यक्त्व, *Aviratasamyaktva*. Vowless right belief. Belief is produced by the उपशम, *Upashama*, subsidence of the 4 अनन्तानुबन्धीकपाप, *Anantanubandhikashayas*, Error-feeding passions and one are three kinds of दशैव मोहनीय, right-belief-deluding karmas respectively, i. e., one for a soul who has never been or three for a soul who has been in possession of सम्यक्त्व, *Samyaktva*, right belief. The soul here has belief in the path of Liberation, but cannot observe the rules of conduct for attaining Liberation. 3 kinds of thought-activity may be noted in this stage :

- (1) उपशमसम्यक्त्व, *Upasamasamyakta* is attained by the उपशम, *Upasama*, subsidence of 5 or 7 kinds of deluding karmas.
- (2) क्षयिकसम्यक्त्व, *Kshayikasamyakta* is attained by the destruction of the 7 प्रकृति *prakrties*.
- (3) क्षयोपशमसम्यक्त्व, *Ksayopashamasamyakta* is attained by the destruction or subsidence of 6, and the continuous operation of the 7th, i. e., सम्यक्प्रकृतिमिथ्यात्व, *Samyakprakrtimithyatva*, right-belief clouded occassionlly by the slightest wrong belief. This 3rd kind of thoughtactivity is characterised by चल, मल, जगद, i. e., the 3 defects :

1. Chala. Of being shaken in his right belief, e. g., thinking that, worship of सान्तिनाथ, *Santinatha* will bring शान्ति, calmness, or that of पारस्यनाथ, *Parsvanatha* will remove obstacles, etc., etc., whereas all Arhats are the same.

Mala. Of having the thought activity soiled by one or more of the defects on, transgressions, e. g., शङ्का, *Sanka*, doubt.

कांक्षा, *Kanksa*, desire of sense pleasures.

विचिकित्सा, *Vichikitsa*, Hatred of the sick and deformed, etc.

अन्यद्रिष्टिप्रसङ्गः, *Anyadristiprasanga*. Thinking admiringly of wrong believers and अन्यद्रिष्टिस्तवः, *Anyadrististastava*, Praising wrong believers.

3 अगदहा, *Agadha*. Of losing firm hold of right belief, e. g., dedicating a temple and still thinking it to be one's own property,

5. दशविराट्, *Dashavirata*. actual vows. Taking the Partial vows. All the 11 प्रतिमा, *Pratimas* or stages of a layman's life come in this. (These are given on page, 118 Chapter VII. 20.)

6. प्रमत्तविराट्, *Pramattavirata*, Imperfect vows. After renunciation of all worldly objects, still occasionally to turn the mind to the service or needs of the body. This is, the *pramattabhava* careless slackness in concentration. Henceforth the stages are all in the life of a मुनि, *Muni*, Saint.

7. अप्रमत्तविराट्, *Apramattavirata*. Perfect vows. Renouncing the careless slackness of the 6th *gunasthana*, and being absorbed in spiritual contemplation (धर्मध्यान, Righteous concentration of the highest type.)

From here, there are 2 श्रेणी, *Srenis*, ways of ascent. (1) उपसमाश्रयेणी, *Upasamasreni* in which the चरित्रमोहनीयकर्म, *right-conduct*-deluding karma subsides; (2) क्षपकश्रेणी, *Ksapakasreni*, in which it is being destroyed. This last is the necessary way to मोक्ष, *Moksha*, Liberation.

8. अपूर्वकल्प, *Apurvakarana*. New thought activity, कारण, *Karana* or thought-activity which the saint's soul had never yet acquired. This is the beginning of the 1st शुक्लध्यान, *Sukladhyan*, pure concentration on the pure आत्मा, *Atma* or self.

9. अनिवृत्तकल्प, *Anivrttakarana*. Advanced thought-activity. Special thought-activity of a still greater purity. A stage of प्रथमशुक्लध्यान, *Prathamasukladhyan*, 1st *Sukladhyan*.

10. सूक्ष्मसम्पराय, *Suksmasamparaya*. Slightest delusion. All passions are destroyed or have subsided, except सूक्ष्मसंन्यस्तलोभ, very slight nominal greed, this is also 1st *Shukla dhyan*.

11. उपशान्तमोह, *Upashantamoha*, or उपशान्तकल्प, *Upashantakasaya*, subsided delusion. A thought-activity which is produced by the उपशान्, subsidence of entire चरित्रमोहनीय right conduct-deluding karmas. This is also 1st *Shukladhyan*. A saint must

fall down from here. But if strong enough, he can resume his ascent from the कषक, *Kshapaka* mode of ascent in the 8th stage.

12. क्षीणमोहः, *Kshīnamoha*. Delusionless. The entire चरित्रमोहनीय, right-conduct-deluding karmas are destroyed in this stage. And the thought-activity produced belongs to the 2nd सुकलध्याय, *Sukladhayan*. The saint attaining this, does so directly from the 10th stage without passing through the 11th stage.
13. सयोगकेवलि, *Sayogakevali*, Vibrating-Perfect soul. Before commencing this the soul must have destroyed the three remaining धातियाकर्तृ, Destructive karmas : (कलाकरणीय दर्शनाकरणीय, अन्तराय) Knowledge obscuring, conation obscuring and obstructive karmas. Here the soul becomes अर्हत्, Arhat or Perfect soul in human body with vibrations in it. Preaching and Peregrinations belong to this stage.
14. अयोगकेवली, *Ayoga-kevali*, Vibrationless perfect soul. This is attained when there is before the sayoga kevali's Liberation just enough time to speak out the 5 letters अ, इ, उ, ऋ, ए. In this stage—a very brief one indeed the vibrations of the holy body cease, and the soul attaining Peace and Bliss

SUTRA 3

अप्राप्तमिकादिभव्यत्वानां च ॥ ३ ॥

Aupasamikadibhavyatvanam cha.

(There is also non-existence of भाव *bhava* or thought-activity) due to the operation, subsidence and to the destruction-subsidence and operation of the karma, and of भव्यत्व *bhavyatva*, (i. e., the capacity of becoming liberated.

(Of course the क्षायिक *kshayika*, thought-activity due to a total extinction of karmas, is retained, and also पारिणामिक *Parinamika*, the own natural-activity of the soul i. e., its जीवत्व *Jivatva*, soulness or livingness.)

SUTRA 4

अन्यत्र केवलसम्यक्त्वज्ञानदर्शनसिद्धत्वेभ्यः ॥ ४ ॥

Anyat kevala samyaktvajñāna darsana siddhatvabhyah.

Otherwise (there remain सम्यक् perfect-right belief, ज्ञान perfect-right knowledge, दर्शन perfect conation, and सिद्धत्वं the state of having accomplished All.

(Perfect conation and perfect knowledge imply perfect power

also.

SUTRA 5

तदनन्तरमुदूर्ध्वं गच्छत्यालोकान्तात् ॥ ५ ॥

Tadanantaamurddhvam gachchhantyalokantat.

After that (liberation from all karmas [the liberated souls go up-ward, (right vertically) to the end of लोक *Loka*, (or the Universe).

SUTRA 6 and 7

पूर्वप्रयोगादसंगत्वाद्बन्धच्छेदात्तथागतिपरिणामाच्च ॥ ६ ॥

आविद्धकुलालचक्रवद्व्यपगतलेपासाधुवदेरण्डबीजवदग्निसिलावच्च ॥ ७ ॥

(6th) **Purvaprayogadaasangatva-dbandhachhedattathagati pavinamachcha.**

(7th) **Aviddhakulalachakravadvapagatalopalambuvadekan-davijavadagnisikhavachcha.**

(This upward motion is due to 4 considerations :)

- (1) पूर्वप्रयोगात्, *Purvaprayogata*, (momentum or instinct produced in the soul,) by its previous activity, (directed to the attainment of Liberation) like a potter's wheel (which once set in motion goes on) circling (even when the potter's hand and wand are both taken away.)
- (2) असंगत्वात् *Asangatvat*, The non-association or non-existence of the company (which kept it down, -i. e. the absence of karmas,) like (an empty) gourd (which) coated with clay (sinks down in water, but the clay) being washed off, (it bobs up to the surface again.)
- (3) बन्धच्छेदात्, *Bandhachchedat*, (On account of) the bondage being broken, like the castor-bean (which flies up at once, when the fruit which kept it in confinement is broken open).
- (4) तथागतिपरिणामात्, *Tathagatiparinamat*, (Due to its being the soul's) nature to go upwards, like the flames of fire.

SUTRA 8

धर्मस्तिकायभावात् ॥ ८ ॥

Dharmastikayabhavat.

(But it does not rise higher than the extreme limit to लोक *Loka* or the Universe), because (beyond it there is) the non-existence of धर्मस्तिकाय *Dharmastikaya* or the medium of motion.

SUTRA 9

क्षेत्रकालगतिलिङ्गतीर्थचारित्रप्रत्येकबुद्धबोधितज्ञानावगाहनान्तरसंख्याल्पबहुत्वत

साध्या : ॥ ६ ॥

**Ksetra kala gati linga tirtha charitra pratyeka buddha bodhita
jñāna vagāhanantara samkhyālpā bahutvata sādhyah.**

(The Liberated soul) should be considered (with reference to the following.)

1. क्षेत्र Space : (1) The liberation is in its own self.
(2) The Liberated soul is in सिद्धक्षेत्र Siddhaksetra, the place of the Liberated.
(3) The place of the Liberated. आकाश Akasa space.
(4) The place in its last incarnation, such soul could have been born only in one of the 15 कर्मभूमि Karmabhūmis in the 2½ द्वीप Dvīpas,
(5) The Liberated soul in the 2½ Dvīpas may have been in the 15 Karma bhūmis, but being kid-napped may have been left any where in the 2½ dvīpas, from which he attained Liberation. Therefore the place of the Liberated is as big as the 2½ dvīpas, i. e. 45 lacs yojanas in diameter.
2. काल, Kala Time : (1) Liberation takes place only in one samaya (समय).
(2) Liberation takes place only when the last incarnation is in the end of the 3rd or in the 4th age of the अवसर्पिणी, Avasarpini. But those born in the 4th can attain salvation in the 5th age. And in the उत्सर्पिणी, Utsarpini, in the corresponding ages
(3) But in kid-napping from विदेह, Videhas, in all ages, as also in the Videhas, from where is Liberation at all times.
3. गति, Gati. Condition of Existence :
(1) Liberated soul is in the 5th or सिद्धगति Siddhagati.
(2) Liberated soul comes up only from the human condition of existence.
4. लिङ्ग, Linga. Sex : (1) There is no sex in liberated state.
(2) In the last incarnation, the soul may have

been feminine, masculine or common in thought-actrity or bhavas (भावलिङ्ग) in ascending up to the 9th stage. In the 10th stage there are no such bhavas, but the body must be masculine dravya (द्रव्यलिङ्ग).

5. तीर्थ, *Tirtha*. (1) Liberated soul wasa तीर्थकर, *Tirthankara*.
(2) „ „ was not a *Tirthankara*.
6. चरित्र, *Charitra*, Conduct. According to the particular conduct which led him to Liberation.
7. प्रत्येकबुद्धबोधित, *Pratyeka buddha bodhita*. Where he was led to the path of Liberation by his own intuition or by the precept of another.
8. ज्ञान, *Jnana*. Knowledge. According to the kinds of knowledge which preceded perfect knowledge (केवलज्ञान) They may be 2, 3, or 4 kinds.
9. आवाहान, *Avagahana*, Stature, i. e. the form and stature of his last body:
Maximum : 525 धनुष, *Dhanusa*—2100 हाथ, *Haths*.
Minimum : 3½ Haths.
10. अन्तर *Antara*. Interval. When one or more souls are Liberated, there may be a minimum interval of one समय, *Samaya* a maximum interval of 6 months, before others are Liberated. If the rise of Liberated souls is continuous, it must continue at least for 2 samayas and at most for 8 samayas.
11. संख्या, *Samkhya*. Number :
(1) Minimum : 1 soul in one samaya.
Maximum : 108 souls in one samaya.
(2) In every 6 months, and 8 samayas, 608 souls must be liberated.
12. अल्पबहुत्व *Alpa bahutva*. Quantty, as to more or less :
(1) More will go from the region of their birth.
Less will go when kid-napped.
(2) Less from अम्बुद्वीप *Jambu dvipa*. More from धातकीखण्ड, *Dhataki khanda* still more from पुष्करद्वीप *Puskaravara dvipa*.



**PRINTED BY HON. PRIN. ADVISOR M. K JAIN M.A., J.D. FROM
SRI DESH BHUSHAN PRESS, DELHI-6**



